## MITEL NETWORKS \*\*

# 5700 Voice First Application

## Administrator Guide

Release 1.1



## Notice

The information contained in this document is believed to be accurate in all respects but is not warranted by Mitel Networks<sup>TM</sup> Corporation (MITEL<sup>®</sup>). The information is subject to change without notice and should not be construed in any way as a commitment by Mitel or any of its affiliates or subsidiaries. Mitel and its affiliates and subsidiaries assume no responsibility for any errors or omissions in this document. Revisions of this document or new editions of it may be issued to incorporate such changes.

No part of this document can be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means - electronic or mechanical - for any purpose without written permission from Mitel Networks Corporation.

#### Trademarks

Mitel Networks and the MITEL logo are trademarks of Mitel Networks Corporation.

VCON is a trademark of VCON Ltd. MeetingPoint is a registered trademark of VCON, Inc., in the United States.

Microsoft, Windows, NetMeeting and the Microsoft Internet Explorer logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Other product names mentioned in this document may be trademarks of their respective companies and are hereby acknowledged.

#### Revision A March 2003

 ®,™ Trademark of MITEL Networks Corporation Ltd.
 © Copyright 2002, MITEL Networks Corporation Ltd. All rights reserved.

## Limited Warranty

Mitel Networks Corporation. warrants that SOFTWARE will perform according to accompanying user documentation for a period of 90 (ninety) days from the date of receipt; replacement SOFTWARE will be warranted for 90 (ninety) days from the date of receipt. This Limited Warranty shall not apply to any product that in the opinion of Mitel Networks Corporation. has not been installed or upgraded according to accompanying documentation from Mitel Networks Corporation. or been subject to misuse, misapplication, negligence or accident while in the hands of the purchaser.

**GRANT OF LICENCE** Mitel Networks Corporation grants the Purchaser a nonexclusive and non-transferable license to use the SOFTWARE product and to make one copy solely for backup or archival purposes, which may include user documentation provided via online or other electronic form. Additional copies may not be made nor may anyone else be allowed to copy or otherwise reproduce any part of the licensed software without prior written consent of Mitel Networks Corporation.

**LIABILITIES** Mitel Networks entire liability and the Purchaser's exclusive remedy shall be at Mitel Networks option, either return of the price paid or repair/ replacement of the Product not meeting Mitel Networks declared Limited warranty. Mitel Networks or its suppliers shall not be liable in any event to anyone for any indirect, incidental, consequential, special or exemplary damages including without limitation damages for loss of business profits, business interruptions, business information or other pecuniary loss arising out of the use of or inability to use the said Product even if advised of the possibility of such damages. In any case, Mitel Networks entire liability under any provision of this agreement shall be limited to the amount actually paid by the Purchase for the Product.

## About this Administrator's Guide

This Administrator guide explains how to work with the Mitel Networks<sup>™</sup> 5700 Voice First Application (5700 VFA) system. The following chapter summary briefly describes this guide's contents:

Chapter 1	Welcome to 5700 Voice First Application Introduction to the 5700 VFA and to this Administrator's Guide
Chapter 2	Getting Started Instructions for installing the 5700 VFA.
Chapter 3	<b>A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator</b> Brief description of the main 5700 VFA applications' screens.
Chapter 4	Administering the 5700 VFA Procedures for configuring administrators and 5700 VFA, monitoring status within the video network, and setting up hunting and administrative groups.
Chapter 5	<b>Setting 5700 VFA System Properties</b> Descriptions of the various properties that comprise the 5700 VFA system configuration.
Chapter 6	<b>Defining End Point Nodes</b> Procedures for defining registered end points which run Mitel Networks or third-party videoconferencing applications.
Chapter 7	<b>Registering Gateways</b> Procedures for registering, setting up a gateway's 5700 VFA configuration and setting up available gateway services.
Chapter 8	<b>Registering an MCU</b> Procedures for registering, setting up an MCU's 5700 VFA configuration, defining MCU service properties, and setting up MCU service permission groups.

Chapter 9	<b>Neighboring Zones</b> Procedures for setting up an 5700 VFA-managed network that includes more than one zone of videoconferencing users.
Chapter 10	<b>Registering with LDAP Directories</b> Procedures and required information for setting up the 5700 VFA configuration in online directory servers such as ILS and NDS.
Chapter 11	Initiating Videoconferences From the 5700 VFA Administrator Instructions for setting up and starting videoconferences from the Administrator application.
Chapter 12	Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed
	Instructions for setting up a Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge for initiating ad-hoc multipoint videoconferences.
Chapter 13	<b>Customizing the 5700 VFA Administrator</b> Procedures for customizing the Administrator application according to your personal preferences.
Appendix A	<b>MeetingPoint End Point Properties</b> Definitions of configuration properties for MeetingPoint 4.5 (and higher) end points.
Appendix B	<b>5760 Videoconferencing Appliance End Point</b> <b>Properties</b> Definitions of configuration properties for Mitel Networks 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance end points.
Appendix C	<b>QoS Priority Values</b> List of available QoS priority level settings for IP Precedence and DiffServ.
Appendix D	Using Accord <sup>™</sup> MGC with the 5700 VFA Instructions for setting up the Accord MGC's configuration for management within the 5700 VFA network.

Appendix E	Upgrading 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance Software Procedures for updating your Mitel Networks 5760 VCA devices to the latest software version.
Appendix F	Setting Up The 5020/5220 IP Phone To Work With 5700 VFA Procedures for programming a "Video" key on the 5020/5220 IP Phone.
Appendix G	The 3300 ICP and the 5700 VFA Procedures for 3300 ICP-related programming.

## Mitel Networks Technical Support

This Administrator's Guide was designed to help you set up and work with your 5700 VFA easily so that you can enjoy its many features.

If a situation occurs that is not covered by the supplied documentation, please request help from our Technical Support channels. Mitel Networks Corporation will make its strongest efforts to help you resume your videoconferencing as soon as possible.

Contact your local Mitel Networks distributor, and request assistance from its technical support department.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.1       About the 5700 VFA Server       1-1         1.2       5700 VFA Administrator       1-2         LDAP Proxy       1-3         1.3       Glossary of 5700 VFA Terms       1-3         2       Getting Started       2-1         2.1       Minimum System Requirements       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.2       Installing the 5700 VFA Server       2-3         2.3       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-6         2.5       Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6       Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7       Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8       Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9       Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         3       A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         3.1       The Main View       3-2         2.7       Basic 5700 VFAs       3-2         3.1       The Main View       3-2         3.2       Connected 5	1	We	Icome to 5700 Voice First Application	
1.2       5700 VFA Administrator       1-2         LDAP Proxy       1-3         1.3       Glossary of 5700 VFA Terms       1-3         2       Getting Started       2-1         5700 VFA Server       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.1       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.5       Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6       Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7       Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8       Voice First Mode       2-11         3       AQuick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         3.1       The Main View       3-2         Connected 5700 VFAs       3-2       Registered Nodes         3.2       Rende Status View       3-5         3.3       The Login Status View       3-5         3.4       The Node Status View       3-5         3.5       LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6       The Niel View       3-7 <th></th> <th>1.1</th> <th>About the 5700 VFA Server</th> <th></th>		1.1	About the 5700 VFA Server	
LDAP Proxy       1-3         1.3 Glossary of 5700 VFA Terms       1-3         2 Getting Started       2-1         5700 VFA Server       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.1 Installing the 5700 VFA Server       2-3         2.3 Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4 Installing the 5700 VFA       2-6         2.5 Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6 Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7 Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.9 Non-Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9 Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         31 The Main View       3-2         Connected 5700 VFAs       3-3         Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-3         Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-4         Filtering the Main View       3-5         3.3 The Login Status View       3-5         3.4 The Kiter Use       3-7         3.6 The Mitel View		1.2	5700 VFA Administrator	
1.3       Glossary of 5700 VFA Terms       1-3         2       Getting Started       2.1         S700 VFA Server       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         S700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.1       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-6         2.5       Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6       Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7       Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8       Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9       Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         3       A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         Registered Nodes       3-3       2-7         Registered Nodes       3-3       2-3         Registered Nodes       3-3       3-3         Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-4         Filtering the Main View       3-5       3.2         3.2       The Node Status View       3-5         3.3       The Login Status View			LDAP Proxy	
2       Getting Started         2.1       Minimum System Requirements       2-1         5700 VFA Server       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.2       Installing the 5700 VFA Server       2-3         2.3       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4       Installing the 5700 VFA       2-6         2.5       Replacing the License Key       2-6         2.5       Replacing the S700 VFA       2-8         2.7       Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8       Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9       Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         3       A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         3.1       The Main View       3-2         Connected 5700 VFAs       3-3       3-2         Registered Nodes       3-3         Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-5         3.2       The Node Status View       3-5         3.3       The Login Status View       3-6 <t< th=""><th></th><th>1.3</th><th>Glossary of 5700 VFA Terms</th><th> 1-3</th></t<>		1.3	Glossary of 5700 VFA Terms	1-3
2.1       Minimum System Requirements       2-1         5700       VFA Server       2-1         5700       VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700       VFA Administrator Application       2-1         5700       VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks       5720       Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.2       Installing the 5700       VFA Administrator       2-3         2.3       Installing the 5700       VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4       Installing the 5700       VFA       Administrator       2-6         2.5       Replacing the License Key       2-7       2.6       Running the 5700       VFA         2.7       Basic 5700       VFA       Operations       2-10       2.8       Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9       Non-Voice First Mode       2-11       3       A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator         3.1       The Main View       3-2       Connected 5700 VFAs       3-2         Registered Nodes       3-3       Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-4         Filtering the Main View       3-5       3.3       The Login Status View       3-5         3.2       The Node Status Vie	2	Get	tting Started	
5700 VFA Server       2-1         5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.2 Installing the 5700 VFA Server       2-3         2.3 Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4 Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-6         2.5 Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6 Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7 Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8 Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9 Non-Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9 Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         3 A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         3.1 The Main View       3-2         Connected 5700 VFAs       3-2         Registered Nodes       3-3         Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-5         3.2 The Node Status View       3-5         3.3 The Login Status View       3-6         3.4 The Event Log       3-6         3.5 LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6 The Mitel View       3-7         4 Administering the 5700 VFA       4-1         4.1 Setting Up Administrator       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1		2.1	Minimum System Requirements	
5700 VFA Administrator Application       2-1         Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge       2-2         2.2 Installing the 5700 VFA Server       2-3         2.3 Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4 Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-6         2.5 Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6 Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7 Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8 Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9 Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         3 A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         2.1 The Main View       3-2         2.2 Connected 5700 VFAs       3-3         2.3 Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-4         4 Multiple Selection       3-4         Filtering the Main View       3-5         3.2 The Node Status View       3-5         3.3 The Login Status View       3-6         3.4 The Event Log       3-6         3.5 LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6 The Mitel View       3-7         3.6 The Mitel View       3-7         3.6 The Mitel View       3-7         3.7 Adding an Administrator       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1			5700 VFA Server	
Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge2-22.2 Installing the 5700 VFA Server2-32.3 Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator2-52.4 Installing the 5720 VCB2-62.5 Replacing the License Key2-72.6 Running the 5700 VFA2-82.7 Basic 5700 VFA Operations2-102.8 Voice First Mode2-102.9 Non-Voice First Mode2-113 A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator3-23.1 The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2 The Node Status View3-63.4 The Event Log3-63.5 LDAP Servers3-73.6 The Mitel View3-74 Administering the 5700 VFA4.1 Setting Up Administrator4-1Adding an Administrator Properties4-34.2 Editing Nodes4-4			5700 VFA Administrator Application	
2.2       Installing the 5700 VFA Server       2-3         2.3       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4       Installing the 5720 VCB       2-6         2.5       Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6       Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7       Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8       Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9       Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         3       A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         3.1       The Main View       3-2         Connected 5700 VFAs       3-2         Registered Nodes       3-3         Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-4         Multiple Selection       3-4         Filtering the Main View       3-5         3.2       The Node Status View       3-5         3.3       The Login Status View       3-6         3.4       The Event Log       3-6         3.5       LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         3.7       Administrator       4-1         Adding an Administrator       <			Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge	
2.3       Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator       2-5         2.4       Installing the 5720 VCB       2-6         2.5       Replacing the License Key       2-7         2.6       Running the 5700 VFA       2-8         2.7       Basic 5700 VFA Operations       2-10         2.8       Voice First Mode       2-10         2.9       Non-Voice First Mode       2-11         3       A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator       3-2         3.1       The Main View       3-2         Connected 5700 VFAs       3-2         Registered Nodes       3-3         Performing Tasks in the Main View       3-4         Multiple Selection       3-4         Filtering the Main View       3-5         3.2       The Node Status View       3-5         3.3       The Login Status View       3-6         3.4       The Event Log       3-6         3.5       LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         4       Administrator       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Adding an Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2      Editing Nodes       4-4 <td></td> <td>2.2</td> <td>Installing the 5700 VFA Server</td> <td></td>		2.2	Installing the 5700 VFA Server	
2.4Installing the 5720 VCB2-62.5Replacing the License Key2-72.6Running the 5700 VFA2-82.7Basic 5700 VFA Operations2-102.8Voice First Mode2-102.9Non-Voice First Mode2-113A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator3-23.1The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3.3The Login Status View3.4The Event Log3.5LDAP Servers3.6The Mitel View3.73-63.4Setting Up Administrators4Adding an Administrator Properties4.2Editing Nodes4.2Editing Nodes4.4		2.3	Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator	
2.5Replacing the License Key2-72.6Running the 5700 VFA2-82.7Basic 5700 VFA Operations2-102.8Voice First Mode2-102.9Non-Voice First Mode2-113A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator3-23.1The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3.3The Login Status View3.4The Event Log3.5LDAP Servers3.6The Mitel View3.73-64Administrator4.1Setting Up Administrator Properties4.2Editing Nodes4.2Editing Nodes4.4Administrator Properties4.1Setting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.1Ketting Nodes4.2Ketting Nodes4.3Ketting Nodes4.4		2.4	Installing the 5720 VCB	
2.6Running the 5700 VFA2-82.7Basic 5700 VFA Operations2-102.8Voice First Mode2-102.9Non-Voice First Mode2-113A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator3.1The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3.3The Login Status View3.4The Event Log3.5LDAP Servers3.6The Mitel View3.73.64Administrators4.1Setting Up Administrator4.2Editing Nodes4.2Editing Nodes4.4Administrator Properties4.4Administrator Properties4.4		2.5	Replacing the License Key	
2.7Basic 5700 VFA Operations2-102.8Voice First Mode2-102.9Non-Voice First Mode2-11 <b>3A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator</b> 3-23.1The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3.3The Login Status View3.4The Event Log3.5LDAP Servers3.6The Mitel View3.73.64Administering the 5700 VFA4.1Setting Up Administrator4.2Editing Nodes4.2Editing Nodes4.4		2.6	Running the 5700 VFA	
2.8Voice First Mode2-102.9Non-Voice First Mode2-113A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator3.1The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3-53.3The Login Status View3-63.4The Event Log3-63.5LDAP Servers3-73.6The Mitel View3-74Administering the 5700 VFA4-1Adding an Administrator4-1Adding an Administrator Properties4-34.2Editing Nodes4-4		2.7	Basic 5700 VFA Operations	
2.9Non-Voice First Mode2-113A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator3.1The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3.53.53.6The Login Status View3.6The Mitel View3.6The Mitel View3.73.64Administering the 5700 VFA4.1Setting Up Administrators4.2Editing Nodes4.2Editing Nodes4.1Net		2.8	Voice First Mode	
3A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator3.1The Main View3.2Connected 5700 VFAs3.2Registered Nodes3.3Performing Tasks in the Main View3.4Multiple Selection3.2The Node Status View3.3The Login Status View3.4The Event Log3.51.53.6The Mitel View3.6The Mitel View3.73.63.6The Mitel View3.73.73.6The Mitel View3.73.6Administrators4Adding an Administrator Properties4.1Setting Up Administrator Properties4.2Editing Nodes4.1Yel		2.9	Non-Voice First Mode	2-11
3.1The Main View3-2Connected 5700 VFAs3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3-53.3The Login Status View3-63.4The Event Log3-63.5LDAP Servers3-73.6The Mitel View3-74Administering the 5700 VFA4-14.1Setting Up Administrators4-1Adding an Administrator4-34.2Editing Nodes4-4	3	A	Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator	
Connected 5700 VFAs.3-2Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3-53.3The Login Status View3-63.4The Event Log3.51.5LDAP Servers3-73.6The Mitel View4Administering the 5700 VFA4.1Setting Up Administrators4.1Setting Up Administrator4.2Editing Nodes4.4		3.1	The Main View	
Registered Nodes3-3Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3-53.33.4The Login Status View3-63-63.5LDAP Servers3.6The Mitel View3-73-64Administering the 5700 VFA4.1Setting Up Administrators4.1Setting Up Administrator4.2Editing Nodes4.2Editing Nodes			Connected 5700 VFAs	
Performing Tasks in the Main View3-4Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3-53.3The Login Status View3-63.4The Event Log3-63.5LDAP Servers3-73.6The Mitel View3-74Administering the 5700 VFA4.1Setting Up Administrators4-1Adding an Administrator4-34.2Editing Nodes4-4			Registered Nodes	
Multiple Selection3-4Filtering the Main View3-53.2The Node Status View3-53.3The Login Status View3-63.4The Event Log3-63.5LDAP Servers3-73.6The Mitel View3-74Administering the 5700 VFA4-14.1Setting Up Administrators4-1Adding an Administrator4-1Changing Administrator Properties4-34.2Editing Nodes4-4			Performing Tasks in the Main View	
Filtering the Main View			Multiple Selection	
3.2       The Node Status View       3-5         3.3       The Login Status View       3-6         3.4       The Event Log       3-6         3.5       LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         4       Administering the 5700 VFA       4-1         4.1       Setting Up Administrators       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Changing Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2       Editing Nodes       4-4			Filtering the Main View	
3.3       The Login Status View       3-6         3.4       The Event Log       3-6         3.5       LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         4       Administering the 5700 VFA       4-1         4.1       Setting Up Administrators       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Changing Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2       Editing Nodes       4-4		3.2	The Node Status View	
3.4       The Event Log       3-6         3.5       LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         4       Administering the 5700 VFA       3-7         4.1       Setting Up Administrators       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Changing Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2       Editing Nodes       4-4		3.3	The Login Status View	
3.5       LDAP Servers       3-7         3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         4       Administering the 5700 VFA       4-1         4.1       Setting Up Administrators       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Changing Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2       Editing Nodes       4-4		3.4	The Event Log	
3.6       The Mitel View       3-7         4       Administering the 5700 VFA       4-1         4.1       Setting Up Administrators       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Changing Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2       Editing Nodes       4-4		3.5	LDAP Servers	
4 Administering the 5700 VFA         4.1 Setting Up Administrators       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Changing Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2 Editing Nodes       4-4		3.6	The Mitel View	
4.1       Setting Up Administrators       4-1         Adding an Administrator       4-1         Changing Administrator Properties       4-3         4.2       Editing Nodes       4-4	4	Adı	ministering the 5700 VFA	
Adding an Administrator4-1Changing Administrator Properties4-34.2Editing Nodes4-4		4.1	Setting Up Administrators	4-1
Changing Administrator Properties			Adding an Administrator	4-1
4.2 Editing Nodes			Changing Administrator Properties	
		4.2	Editing Nodes	
Adding Nodes			Adding Nodes	4-4

#### **Table of Contents**

	Deleting a Login Request	
	Setting a Node's Properties	
	Finding Nodes and Objects in the Administrator	
	Editing Multiple Nodes	
	Changing Directory Numbers	
	Deleting a Node	
4.3	Registering 5020/5220 IP Phones	
	To add a phone:	
	To change the name of the phone in the list:	
4.4	Status Monitoring	
	Monitoring Nodes in the Main View	
	Viewing the Login Status	
	Viewing the Node Status	
	Event Log Monitoring	
4.5	Setting Up Templates	
	Editing a Template	
4.6	Adding Hunting Groups	
	General Properties	
	Call Forward Properties	
	Hunting Group Properties	
	Hunting Group LDAP Properties	
	Additional ID Properties	
4.7	Adding an Administrative Group	
	Changing Group Member Properties	
4.8	Adding a Short Dial Number	
	General Properties	
	Call Forwarding Properties	
	LDAP Properties	
	Additional ID Properties	
Cat	ting 5700 VEA System Properties	
5-1	5700 VEA Dreagerties	5.0
5.1	5700 VFA Properties	
	Connection Properties	
	Dial Dian	
	Diai Pian	
5.2	LDAP Settings	
5.2	Call Control Properties	
	Bandwidth Control	

5

5.3	ISDN Routing Properties	5-14
	System Location	5-14
	Dialing Prefixes	5-14
5.4	Security Properties	5-15
	Security Mode	5-15
	License	5-17
	Non-Registered Devices	5-19
5.5	H.323 Gatekeeper Properties	5-20
	Zone Settings	5-20
	Advanced Settings	5-22
5.6	Reporting Properties	5-23
	Billing	5-23
	Event Log	5-24
Def	ining End Point Nodes	
6.1	Setting Up an End Point	6-1
	Login Attempt by Duplicate Users	6-2
6.2	Setting End Point 5700 VFA Properties	6-3
	General Properties	6-3
	Status Properties	6-4
	Call Forwarding Properties	6-5
	Bandwidth Control Properties	6-7
	Pickup Permissions Properties	6-8
	MCU Services Properties	6-9
	Gateway Services Properties	6-10
	ISDN Call Routing Properties	6-12
	Product Information Properties	6-13
	LDAP Properties	6-14
	Additional IDs Properties	6-15
Roc	nistoring Gatoways	
7 1	Logging in a New Gateway	7-1
7.1	Setting Gateway Properties	
1.2	General Properties	
	Product Information Properties	
	ISDN Dialing Properties	7-5 7_6
73	Setting Gateway Service Properties	
1.5	General Properties	

	General Properties	7-8
	Bandwidth Control Properties	7-9
7.4	Gateway Service Hunting Groups	7-9

6

7

#### **Table of Contents**

8	Reg	gistering an MCU	
	8.1	Logging in a New MCU	
	8.2	Setting MCU Properties	
		General Properties	
		Bandwidth Control Properties	
		Product Information Properties	8-5
		Additional ID Properties	8-6
	8.3	MCU Services	
		General Properties	
		Bandwidth Control Properties	8-9
		Ad-Hoc Conference Properties	8-9
		Services Properties	
		LDAP Properties	
		Additional ID Properties	
	8.4	MCU Service Permission Groups	
		General Properties	
		Permission Group Properties	
9	Nei	ghboring Zones	
	9.1	The 5700 VFA's Relationship with Neighboring Zones	9-1
	9.2	Logging in New Zones	9-2
		Adding Zones Automatically	9-2
		Adding Zones Manually	9-3
	9.3	Setting Zone Properties	9-4
		General Properties	9-4
		Zone Settings	9-5
		Bandwidth Control Properties	9-7
		MCU Services Properties	9-8
		Gateway Service Properties	9-9
		ISDN Call Routing Properties	9-11
		Product Info Properties	9-12
		Additional IDs Properties	9-13
	9.4	Known Non-Registered End Points	9-13
		Adding a Known Non-Registered End Point	9-13
	9.5	Inter-Zone Videoconferencing Management	9-14
		Setting Up Inter-Zone Dialing	9-14
		Restricting Bandwidth Allotment	9-17
		Restricting H.450 Exchange Functions	9-19
		Sharing Gateway Services with Other Zones	
		Sharing MCU Services with Other Zones	9-22

10	
	10.1 Registering the 5700 VFA with an ILS 10-3
	Setting Up the ILS Configuration in the 5700 VFA Administrator 10-5
	10.2 Registering the 5700 VFA with Microsoft Exchange Server 10-7
	Setting Up the Exchange Server Configuration in the 5700 VFA Admin-
	istrator
	10.3 Registering the 5700 VFA with Windows 2000 Active Directories 10-12
	Adding a User with Full Configuration Rights 10-12
	Adding the 5700 VFA Attributes 10-13
	Adding the 5700 VFA Node Class 10-15
	Granting Full Control Permissions to Users for the Class 10-19
	Setting the Properties of the 5700 VFA Attributes 10-19
	Creating an Organizational Unit for Your 5700 VFA 10-20
	Giving Permissions to 5700 VFA Users 10-21
	Setting Up the LDAP Configuration in the 5700 VFA Administrator10-25
	10.4 Registering the 5700 VFA with Novell Directory Services (NDS) 10-26
	Creating 5700 VFA Attributes 10-26
	Creating the 5700 VFA MXMNode Class 10-29
	Creating an 5700 VFA Container 10-32
	Setting Up the LDAP Group Object Configuration 10-33
	Adding a Trustee for the 5700 VFA MXMNode Container 10-35
	Setting Up the LDAP Configuration in the 5700 VFA Administrator10-35
11	Initiating Videoconferences From the 5700 VEA Administrator
	11.1 Administrator-Initiated Dialing
	11.2 Setting Point-to-Point Videoconference Properties 11-2
	11.3 Administrator-Initiated Hang Un
	11.5 Administrator mitiated mang op
12	Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB
	12.1 Setting Up the 5720 VCB Configuration
	5720 VCB Properties
	5720 VCB Services Properties
	12.2 Expanding to an Ad-hoc Videoconference
12	Customizing the 5700 VEA Administrator
15	13.1 Defining the Main View Ontions
	Tree Styles 13-1
	Item Attributes 13_3
	13.2 Setting Un the Workspace 13-5
	Defining Workspace Ontions
	Managing Workspaces 12.6
	Internating workspaces

13.3 Customizing the Toolbar	
Defining the Toolbar Display	
Adding and Removing Toolbar Buttons	
Creating a Custom Toolbar	
13.4 Customizing the Status Views	
Setting Table On-Screen Display Properties	
Style Formats for Table Elements or Types of Information	

## A MeetingPoint End Point Properties

A.1	Conversation Properties	A-1
	Video	A-1
	Data	A-4
A.2	Calls Properties	A-6
	Incoming Calls	A-6
	Ringing	A-7
	3rd Party Viewer	A-8
	Interactive Multicast	A-10
A.3	User Data Properties	A-12
A.4	Communication Properties	A-13
	LAN	A-13
	Connection	A-15
	Firewall	A-16
	Login	A-16
A.5	Telephony Properties	A-17
	Phone Numbers	A-17
	Switch Type	A-18
	SPID Numbers	A-19
	MSN	A-20
	Subaddressing	A-21
	Dialing	A-22
A.6	Hardware Properties	A-23
	Audio	A-23
	Camera	A-25
A.7	Advanced Properties	A-26
	System Info.	A-26
	QoS	A-27
	Intras	A-29
	Advanced Video	A-30
	Advanced Audio	

В	576	0 Videoconferencing Appliance End Point Properties			
	<b>B</b> .1	Network Configuration	B-2		
		LAN Connection and Registration	B-2		
		Firewall	B-3		
		H.323 Management	B-4		
		QoS	B-6		
		Phone Numbers	B-7		
		Switch Type	B-8		
		SPID Numbers	B-9		
	<b>B</b> .2	Video Properties	B-10		
	B.3	Audio Properties	B-11		
	<b>B.4</b>	Options	B-13		
		General Options	B-13		
		Version	B-14		
		Security	B-15		
С	Qo	S Priority Values			
	C.1	IP Precedence Values	C-1		
	C.2	DiffServ Values	C-1		
П	Using Accord™ MGC with the 5700 VEA				
0	D 1	MGC Configuration	D 1		
	D.1	Network Services Configuration	D-1		
		H 323 Card Configuration	D-4		
	р2	Adding an Accord Meeting Room	D-5		
	D.2	Setting Meeting Room Properties	D-6		
	D.5	General Properties	D-6		
		Ad hoc Conference Properties	D-7		
		Hunting Group Properties	D-8		
		I DAP Properties	D-0		
		Additional ID Properties	D-9		
		Auditional ID Troperties			
Е	Upg	rading 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance Software			
	E.1	Running the Upgrade Program	E-2		
	E.2	Applying the New Upgrade	E-4		
	E.3	Post-Upgrade Procedures	E-5		
	E.4	Installer Mode	E-5		
	E.5	Software Key Upgrade	E-6		

#### **Table of Contents**

#### F Setting Up The 5020/5220 IP Phone To Work With 5700 VFA

#### G The 3300 ICP and the 5700 VFA

G.1	Networking 3300 ICPs	G-1
G.2	Programming Class of Service for IP Phones	G-1
G.3	Entering the 3300 ICP Information in the 5700 VFA	G-2
	The Mitel PBX View	G-2
<b>G</b> .4	Multi-Party Conference Calls	G-3

#### Index

## 1 WELCOME TO 5700 VOICE FIRST APPLICATION

Congratulations on your entry into the revolutionary world of Mitel Networks 5700 Voice First Application (5700 VFA). The 5700 VFA centralizes the management of Video over IP communication within an enterprise-wide network.

## 1.1 About the 5700 VFA Server

The 5700 VFA provides centralized videoconferencing management services for corporate networks running on IP. It transfers many administration and configuration tasks from the individual computers, called *end points*, to the network, where they belong.

The 5700 VFA provides the following services:

- □ Integration with the Mitel Networks 3300 Integrated Communications Platform (Voice First Mode). In Voice First Mode, users with video endpoints at their desktop can add video to a voice call by simply pressing a key on a 5020/5220 IP Phone.
- □ Integrated 5720 Video Conferencing Bridge (5720 VCB) optional.
- □ Status monitoring of network videoconferencing activity
- **Call Accounting**
- Supplementary IP Telephony services, such as Call Forwarding, Pickup and Hunting Groups
- Expansion of point-to-point videoconferences to multipoint sessions (*ad-hoc conferencing*)
- Search capabilities for nodes in zones managed by other 5700 VFAs and gatekeepers.
- □ Simplified gateway and MCU dialing for registered end points
- Control of the usage of gateway and MCU services by registered users
- Bandwidth management for allocating available bandwidth to registered nodes
- Compatibility with external online directory services (LDAP)

H.323 Revision 2-compliant Gatekeeper functions, including login and security:

- Auto-discovery and registration of nodes, such as videoconferencing end points, gateways, MCUs and their respective services.
- Address translation of IP addresses, H.323 aliases, E.164 numbers, e-mail addresses and URLs.

## 1.2 5700 VFA Administrator

The Administrator application provides an interface for performing the management and monitoring of the 5700 VFA network. It may be installed on the same computer as the 5700 VFA Server as well as on additional computers, therefore providing remote management capability.

The Administrator application enables:

- Remote configuration of VCON MeetingPoint, Mitel Networks 5760 Video Conference Appliance, and VCB nodes.
- □ Voice First Mode configuration of 5700 VFA (Mitel PBX view).
- Registration, configuration and deletion of H.323 end points, such as Mitel Networks and other vendors' H.323 Rev. 1 & 2-compliant videoconferencing systems.
- Registration, configuration and deletion of Gateways, MCUs and their respective services.
- Registration of video-enabled 5020/5220 IP Phone, and association of these phones with video endpoints.
- □ Configuration of videoconferencing policies between the local 5700 VFA and zones of nodes managed by other 5700 VFAs and gatekeepers.
- Monitoring of connection states, login status, and events logging.
- Creation of hunting groups (groups of end points that may be called through one common number).
- Creation of administrative groups that reflect the organization's corporate structure and enables efficient configuration of these groups' stations.
- Setting limits on the permitted bandwidth usage.

□ Initiation and hang-up of point-to-point calls between two end points.

□ Network usage reports (Call Details Records and Asset Management Reports).

## LDAP Proxy

The LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) Proxy lists all of the 5700 VFA's registered nodes in online directory servers, such as Microsoft ILS, Exchange, Windows 2000 Active Directories, and Novell NDS. Because the LDAP Proxy handles this task, individual endpoints are automatically listed and therefore, not required to register and perform configuration themselves.

## 1.3 Glossary of 5700 VFA Terms

This section lists special 5700 VFA terms that are commonly used in this guide.

3300 ICP	Mitel Networks 3300 Integrated Communications Platform.
5700 VFA	Mitel Networks 5700 Voice First Application.
5700 VFA Node	A node that is registered in the local 5700 VFA.
Ad-hoc conference	A videoconference that expands from a point-to-point session to a multipoint session while it remains open. Additional end points are "invited" by one of the parties.
Administrator	User whose responsibilities may include monitoring and managing the 5700 VFA network. Three levels of Administrator provide various rights for managing, controlling, monitoring, and viewing information.
End point	An H.323 terminal, Gateway, or MCU. An end point can call and be called. It generates and/or terminates information streams.
Gatekeeper	Application that controls registration (login) into a computer or network, translates addresses, and manages bandwidth within a network.
Gateway	A network device that enables communication between two different types of networks, such as IP and ISDN telephony.
Hunting group	A group of users within an organization that may be reached through one common number.

## Chapter 1 Welcome to 5700 Voice First Application

LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol - used to access online directory servers, for registering and searching for other online users.
Login	The process of gaining entry, or registering, into a computer or a network.
MCU	Multipoint Control Unit - a device used to connect three or more end points in a single video meeting.
Neighbor Node	A node that is registered in a neighboring zone.
Neighboring Zone	A zone that is known and listed in the local 5700 VFA.
Node	A device on a LAN. For example, end points, gateways and MCUs are nodes.
Service	A configuration for the allocation of available bandwidth during videoconferences through gateways or MCUs.
Template	A complete set of default properties for new nodes.
Zone	A collection of nodes that 5700 VFAs and gatekeepers register and manage.

## 2 GETTING STARTED

## 2.1 Minimum System Requirements

The components of the 5700 VFA may be installed and operated on any computer that meets the following minimum requirements:

## 5700 VFA Server

For optimum performance, install the 5700 VFA Server on a workstation or server that contains only the Windows NT 4.0 operating system with Service Pack 5 or higher. We recommend that no other applications were installed on it at any time. The presence of other applications (even if they are not open) may cause unpredictable operating results.

Operating System	Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 5 or higher, Windows 2000 with Service Pack 2 or higher.
Minimum CPU Speed	Pentium 400 Mhz
Recommended Memory	at least 128 MB
Minimum Free Disk Space	200 MB

NOTE 1. No other H.323 application may run at the same time as the 5700 VFA.
2. No other application may use the computer's default H.323 TCP/IP ports.
3. 5700 VFA installation program installs MDAC 2.7 which upgrades the ODBC driver and MSDE 2000.

## **5700 VFA Administrator Application**

The 5700 VFA Administrator application may be installed on any workstation(s) on the network that meet the following specifications:

Operating System	Microsoft Windows 98, Windows 2000, NT 4.0 with Service Pack 5 or higher.
Minimum CPU Speed	Pentium 166 Mhz
Minimum Memory	64 MB
Minimum Free Disk Space	10 MB

## Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge

The Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge (5720 VCB) may be installed on any workstation(s) on the network that meet the following specifications:

<b>Concurrent Sessions</b>	1	2 + VFA	3 or more
Operating System	Microsoft Wind Service Pack 5	lows 2000, or NT 4.0 with or higher.	
Minimum CPU Speed (Pentium)	500 MHz	1.4 GHz	2 Ghz
Minimum Memory	128 MB	256 MB	256 MB
Minimum Free Disk Space	10 MB	10 MB	10 MB
Compatibility Issues	<ul> <li>5700 VFA MediaCo on the sat</li> <li>5700 VFA videocon not be inst</li> </ul>	A Administrator nnect 8000 may ne computer. A Server and/or ferencing applic	or VCON be installed other cations must
	not be me	stance on the sa	ine computer.

**NOTE** All configurations require a Network Interface Card (NIC). When installing the 5720 VCB on a computer with 5700 VFA installed, you can have up to two concurrent 5720 VCB sessions.

## 2.2 Installing the 5700 VFA Server

The 5700 VFA server should be installed on a Windows NT 4.0 (or higher) computer dedicated to the management of your organization's videoconferencing network.

**NOTE** If a previous version of the 5700 VFA Server is installed on the computer, you must uninstall it before installing this version.

#### ► To install the 5700 VFA Server

- 1. Insert the 5700 VFA Setup CD-ROM in your computer's CD-ROM drive.
- 2. If Autorun is enabled, the Installation program appears automatically.

Otherwise, click **Start** in the Windows taskbar and then click **Run**. Browse to the CD-ROM drive and double-click the *Setup.exe* file. The Installation program appears.

- 3. Select 5700 VFA Server.
- 4. Follow the instructions in the Setup Wizard, clicking **Next** to continue. The installation program installs the Server components.
- **NOTE** If upgrading from a previous 5700 VFA version, the Installation program detects it. Click **OK** to continue. The Installation program saves the previous version's database settings, except for Call Details Records (CDRs) and the Event Log.
  - 5. The Wizard asks where to install and use Microsoft SQL database. To install it on the same computer as the 5700 VFA (default setting), click Next. To install it on a different computer, click Choose Location and then enter the appropriate computer name or IP address (when entering an IP address, do not enter leading zeroes).

The installation program builds a system database, which requires a few minutes.

6. At another stage, the Enter Serial Number dialog box appears. Type the serial number that's on the supplied key code agreement and click **OK**.

If you received a version for evaluation, click **Cancel**. To continue installing the evaluation version (limited number of users for a short period), click **Yes** to confirm.

- **NOTE** Whether this is a first-time installation or an upgrade, your initial key code is valid for 30 days. For instructions on making it permanent or increasing the permitted number of registered end points, see "Replacing the License Key" on page 2-7.
  - 7. When the Wizard informs you that the installation is complete, click **Finish**.
  - 8. To install the 5700 VFA Administrator application on the same computer, keep the Installation program open (see the next section).

To exit the Installation program, click Exit.

## 2.3 Installing the 5700 VFA Administrator

The Administrator application may be installed on the same computer as the above applications and/or other workstations from which you may perform remote administration.

**NOTE** The new version of Administrator may be installed over a previous version of the application. You do not need to uninstall the previous version.

#### To install the 5700 VFA Administrator

- 1. Insert the 5700 VFA Setup CD-ROM in your computer's CD-ROM drive.
- 2. If Autorun is enabled, the Setup wizard will appear automatically.

Otherwise, click **Start** in the Windows taskbar and then click **Run**. Browse to the CD-ROM drive and double-click the *Setup.exe* file. The Setup wizard appears.

- 3. Select 5700 VFA Administrator.
- 4. Follow the instructions in the wizard, clicking Next to continue.
- 5. The wizard provides a check box for installing the 5760 VCA Upgrade Utility, which provides you with the ability to upgrade the software version of Mitel Networks 5760 VCA's connected to your organization's network. If your organization has Mitel Networks 5760 VCA's, we recommend that you select to install this application.

Click Next to continue.

- 6. If you selected to install the 5760 VCA Upgrade Utility, the wizard proceeds to its installation process. Follow the instructions in the wizard, clicking **Next** to continue to the next page.
- 7. When the Wizard informs that the installation is complete, click **Finish**.
- 8. To exit the Installation program, click Exit.

#### Chapter 2 Getting Started

## 2.4 Installing the 5720 VCB

The 5720 VCB may be installed on the same computer as the 5700 VFA Administrator or a VCON MediaConnect 8000. However, do not install it on the same computer as the 5700 VFA Server or other videoconferencing system.

**NOTE** The 5720 VCB is available only for licensed users of the combined Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge and Conference Control Options. If you want to add these options to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.

#### To install the 5720 VCB

1. Insert the 5700 VFA Setup CD-ROM in your computer's CD-ROM drive.

If Autorun is enabled, the Setup wizard will appear automatically. Otherwise, click **Start** in the Windows taskbar and then click **Run**. Browse to the CD-ROM drive and double-click the *Setup.exe* file.

- 2. In the Setup window, select VCB.
- 3. Follow the instructions in the Setup wizard, clicking Next to continue.
- 4. At one stage, the wizard provides a choice between installing the 5720 VCB on the same computer as VCON's MediaConnect 8000 or installing it on a computer that does not run a videoconferencing application.
  - To install it on MediaConnect 8000's computer, select Yes. The computer must have two IP addresses to support this configuration. In the wizard, enter the IP address for the 5720 VCB (the other address is reserved for the MediaConnect 8000).
  - Otherwise, select **No**.

Click Next.

- At another stage, the wizard requires the address of the 5700 VFA Server with which the 5720 VCB registers and provides services. Enter the 5700 VFA Server's IP address or DNS name. Click Next.
- 6. After completing the Setup wizard, restart the computer.
- **NOTE** If the address of the associated 5700 VFA changed, if 5700 VFA is uninstalled and reinstalled, or if 5720 VCB will work on a different 5700 VFA: In the **Start** Menu, point to **Programs Mitel Networks VCB** and click

In the Start Menu, point to Programs, Mitel Networks, VCB, and click Update 5700 VFA Address.

## 2.5 Replacing the License Key

The following circumstances require replacement of your 5700 VFA license key:

- Replacing a temporary demo version with a permanent, purchased version. Your initial key code is valid for 30 days.
- Changing the number of permitted registered end points.
- Adding optional features to your 5700 VFA.

**NOTE** This process requires that an initial 5700 VFA is already set up. For instructions on setting up an 5700 VFA, see Chapters 4 and 5.

#### To replace your 5700 VFA license key

- 1. Send the file, *c:\Program Files\Mitel\userkey.txt* to your local Mitel Networks distributor. You will then receive a new key code from the distributor.
- 2. Save the new license code file to a location on your network.
- Run the 5700 VFA Administrator application. In the Administrator window, right-click the 5700 VFA node at the top, point to Property (opening another menu), and click License. The License tab appears.



5700 VFA System License Properties

- 4. Click New Key. The Open dialog box appears.
- 5. Browse to the location where you saved the license code file. Click Open.
- 6. When prompted to apply the license code, click **OK**.
- 7. Click **OK** to implement the license change and close the dialog box.

## 2.6 Running the 5700 VFA

The 5700 VFA server opens automatically during the host computer's startup, and runs unseen as an NT service.

#### **•** To run the 5700 VFA Administrator

☐ In the Windows desktop, click **Start**, point to **Programs** and click **5700 VFA**.



Starting the 5700 VFA Administrator

When you open the 5700 VFA Administrator application for the first time, you must open a new 5700 VFA object in the Main View.

#### **To open a new 5700 VFA**

1. In the 5700 VFA menu, click Log in to New 5700 VFA.

1700 Narw:	techman	
Network <u>A</u> ddress	10.010.96	Pagt 25505
Liver-	94 1	
Enconcet:		

Opening a New 5700 VFA

 Enter a name for the 5700 VFA and the IP network address of the computer that it's installed on. Then, enter the default User name and default password during the startup. Afterwards, you may change these values to meet your own operating needs (see "Adding an Administrator" on page 4-1).

Default user su

#### Default password 1234

- Click Login. The new 5700 VFA is displayed in the Main View of the Administrator application. You can expand the 5700 VFA to see an initial system tree (see Chapter 3, "A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator," for more details).
- 4. To save the administrator application configuration, open the **File** menu and click **Save As**. Save the configuration as a *.vca* file.

Chapter 2 Getting Started

## 2.7 Basic 5700 VFA Operations

This section will list the various tasks required to set up the 5700 VFA for a typical video network. At the end of each description, the location of detailed explanations are provided.

#### 2.8 Voice First Mode

1. Set up administrators.

Enter the administrators and their various privileges into the system. The available privilege levels are Super User, Monitor System and View System Properties. See "Setting Up Administrators" on page 4-1.

2. Set up the 5700 VFA configuration.

Define the various properties of the system's configuration, such as connection details, open or closed mode for registering end points, and so on. See Chapter 5, "Setting 5700 VFA System Properties."

3. Define default settings for end points and other nodes in templates.

A template includes the characteristic properties for a type of node or service. Any new created item in the system will initially have the default properties defined in the template. See "Setting Up Templates" on page 4-25.

4. Set up end point configurations.

End points may be registered with the default properties defined in a template or be set following their login requests. See Chapter 6, "Defining End Point Nodes."

5. Set up the 5700 VFA configurations for Multipoint Control Units (MCU) that register with the 5700 VFA.

MCUs are used for connecting registered end points with a number of other end points in a multipoint videoconference. MCU services are available after the particular MCU is granted login permission to the 5700 VFA. See Chapter 8, "Registering an MCU."

## 2.9 Non-Voice First Mode

1. Set up administrators.

Enter the administrators and their various privileges into the system. The available privilege levels are Super User, Monitor System and View System Properties. See "Setting Up Administrators" on page 4-1.

2. Set up the 5700 VFA configuration.

Define the various properties of the system's configuration, such as connection details, open or closed mode for registering end points, and so on. See Chapter 5, "Setting 5700 VFA System Properties."

3. Define default settings for end points and other nodes in templates.

A template includes the characteristic properties for a type of node or service. Any new created item in the system will initially have the default properties defined in the template. See "Setting Up Templates" on page 4-25.

4. Set up end point configurations.

End points may be registered with the default properties defined in a template or be set following their login requests. See Chapter 6, "Defining End Point Nodes."

5. Create and set up hunting groups.

A hunting group includes a series of nodes that may be grouped together within an organization for a variety of reasons, but may be reached through one common address. See "Adding Hunting Groups" on page 4-27.

6. Create and set up administrative groups.

Administrative Groups of nodes in the Main View can help maintain a visual structure for nodes and the teams and departments to which they belong. This also makes it easier to control end point properties that need to be common within a team or department, such as limiting the available bandwidth for the group. See "Adding an Administrative Group" on page 4-33.

#### Chapter 2 Getting Started

7. Set up the 5700 VFA configuration in a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) online directory server.

By listing 5700 VFA registered users in an LDAP server, they will be able to locate and call all other users listed in the same directory. The 5700 VFA supports several LDAP server applications. See Chapter 10, "Registering with LDAP Directories."

8. Prepare the 5700 VFA to provide gateway dialing services to ISDN connections for the registered end points.

If gateways register with the 5700 VFA, you must set their 5700 VFA configurations in the Administrator application. Then, you have to define the available services. See Chapter 7, "Registering Gateways."

9. Set up the 5700 VFA configurations for Multipoint Control Units (MCU) that register with the 5700 VFA.

MCUs are used for connecting registered end points with a number of other end points in a multipoint videoconference. MCU services are available after the particular MCU is granted login permission to the 5700 VFA. See Chapter 8, "Registering an MCU."

 If your organization has more than one network of videoconferencing users, set up the 5700 VFA configurations for additional zones managed by other 5700 VFAs or gatekeepers on your 5700 VFA Administrator application.

The configuration of additional zones enables end points registered in the local 5700 VFA to engage in videoconferences with end points in these other zones. You can set bandwidth allocation, enable inter-zone Call Details Records (CDR) generation, and other inter-zone videoconferencing management policies. See Chapter 9, "Neighboring Zones."

## 3 A QUICK TOUR OF THE 5700 VFA ADMINISTRATOR

Your work with the 5700 VFA takes place inside the Administrator application, which provides several elements and tools for performing the system management tasks.

In addition, the Administrator application provides various views and tables:

Main View	Displays a connected 5700 VFA and its registered nodes, hunting groups, and templates. From this window, you can view status, monitor activity, and configure properties of these registered users.
Node Status	Displays connection information about specific nodes that you want to monitor.
Login Status	Displays nodes that tried to register but were denied login - you can monitor registration and login procedures for nodes.
Event Log	Displays information about system events and operating conditions.
LDAP Servers	Displays information about the various online directories in which this 5700 VFA lists its registered nodes.

#### Chapter 3 A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator

File View WFA faodes window Help			
	10 Q.	× 10 at 1	*******
INB AR DO NO	Entipe System		- C
rideo Conferencing Res	212	Number/Address	Connection State
Local S700 - su logged in     B - Cogn Respect:     Mid Contenning Device:     Mid Contenning Device:     Add to Personal Content		127.0.0.1	No Calls
Administration     Administration     Goldware Service Hunting Groups     Houring Groups     HOU Permission Groups		818(10.3915.20)	Logged in

The Administrator Application Window

## 3.1 The Main View

Information about the managed 5700 VFA network(s) appears in the Main View. These include:

- Connected 5700 VFAs
- Administrators and their privileges
- Registered nodes and services
- Neighboring 5700 VFAs and Gatekeeper zones
- User numbers and addresses for all registered nodes, services and zones
- Connection and call status.

## **Connected 5700 VFAs**

An Administrator may log in multiple 5700 VFAs. Each logged-in 5700 VFA is represented in the Main View by an entry that has an expandable system tree. When this tree is expanded, you can view nodes (such as Mitel Networks users, gateways, MCUs, and other administrators) that have logged in to that particular 5700 VFA. In addition, associated hunting groups, templates, and neighboring zones are shown in the system tree.

The system tree also shows units that tried to register but were not accepted automatically. In these cases, you have to grant login permission and set up the units' 5700 VFA properties.

For each 5700 VFA the Administrator application stores property information such as name/address, login settings, and various network settings (connection, timeouts, bandwidth management, etc.). For more information, see Chapter 5, "Setting 5700 VFA System Properties".

## **Registered Nodes**

The 5700 VFA supports the registration of Mitel Networks and other H.323 end points, administrators, gatekeepers, gateways, MCUs, gateway services and MCU services. In this Administrator's Guide, registered nodes are also referred to as *5700 VFA nodes*.

These nodes are visible when the system tree is expanded. For each of these items, the Administrator application stores property information such as name/address, bandwidth limits, online directory (LDAP) registration, and more.



5700 VFA Nodes and Hunting Groups

#### Chapter 3 A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator

PETER S700 Years First Application Advanistrator - [Advanistrator.eca - Plain]			
Adeo Danie ancing hers	Number/Addent	Connection Skew	
technon - as logged in	212 25 215 168	T call : 720 klast	
is 🖞 Groups		and the second second second	
E 🖓 System Meria			
E 👗 Adventation			
E. Cotenay Service Husting Groups			
<ul> <li>Finiting Distage</li> <li>Mill Employee (instance)</li> </ul>			
st and System Server			
C. MITEL Software			
Pr. III Decision Godmens			
R. MC Caler Schem			
- III Orale Brown	700	Logged in	
Lucy Myerson	701	Net Loggerd In	
10 The Execut Systemy	110		
Mathew Durcey	103	level 21980 Mapr	
III 🛓 V60 Systems	1 22		
L David Silvar	762	In call : 21380 kbpt	

Displaying Call Status in the Main View

### Performing Tasks in the Main View

For performing tasks in the Main View, the Administrator application provides access to commands in:

Menu Bar	Located at the top of the Administrator application. The menus contain all of the commands required to work in the workspace.
Toolbars	Located below the menu bar. The toolbars contain many of the commands required to work in the workspace. The displayed toolbars may be customized to provide the commands that you use the most.
Shortcut menu	Opens when you right-click an item in the system tree. The shortcut menu contains only commands that relate to the selected item.

#### **Multiple Selection**

To perform an identical task on more than one object, select those objects using the standard Windows selection operations (<Shift> click, <Ctrl> click). You can then drag them to another location in the system tree (for example, into an administrative group), change specific common properties, delete them, or change their 5700 VFA directory numbers.

### **Filtering the Main View**

You can control the amount of information that appears in the Main View by selecting filters according to the details that are important to you. You can set filtering according to the following criteria:

- Entire System
- Systems Not Logged In
- Systems Logged In Systems In Call •

#### ► To filter the main view

In the Main View toolbar, open the Filter list and choose one of the options.

Entre System	
Systems Not Logged In Sectors Logged In	
Systems in Call	
Entile System	

Main View Display Filters

#### 3.2 The Node Status View

The Node Status View makes it easier to see the connection information only about specific nodes instead of viewing the entire system tree. You can monitor the following:

- End points
- Administrator nodes •
- Gateways and services
- MCUs and services •
- ٠ Gatekeeper
- LDAP proxy ٠

Right-click the Node Name of the entry to open a shortcut menu that contains commands that relate to the selected item

	Rode Bezeiption	Hude. Runnber	Sister	Connection State	Bassheidth (Migri)	Antio Codes	Video Codec
-	David Schor	1001	a	Talking to 1084	2*360	G-722 Edk	H 261 CHF
1	Rachel News	1084	2	Talking to 1001	2*380	0.722844	H.281 CIF
10	Gary Rase	1011	- 19	Not Logged In:			-
1	FalcasTECH	1009		Legged In			

Node Status Table

#### Chapter 3 A Quick Tour of the 5700 VFA Administrator

## 3.3 The Login Status View

The Login Status View lists nodes that tried to register, but were not given login and registration permission. This table makes it easier to monitor registration and login procedures for specific nodes instead of viewing the entire system tree.

Logis Category	Network Address	Alias	Login Name	Login Status
Decktop	212.29.219.213	demo	dema	Login Permission Requested
\$760 VC	10.0.10.126	Falcen/TECH	PakonTECH	Login Permission Requested
	Login Category Decitop ST40 VC	Login Category Network Address Dentop 21229219213 5764 VC 10.0.10.128	Login Category Network Address Alias Desitop 212.29.213.213 dame 5764 VC 10.0.10.128 Patcen/IBCH	Login Category         Network Address         Alias         Login Name           Desitop         212.29.218.213         dane         dane           S764 VC         100.18.326         Falcen78CH         Palcen78CH

Login Status View

## 3.4 The Event Log

The Event Log displays information about system events and operating conditions. You can refer to it for troubleshooting and isolating a problem.

The following illustration shows all the types of information (according to column) that the Event Log provides. If you want to display only a few important details, you can define filters that reduce the amount of displayed records according to various criteria.

a Feldite · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·								
-	Same	Security	Itata/Time	Application Type	Balance .	Easter Carde	Istain	ī
-	Tear To Gr	internation.	ORVERT REALING	Usi K	10010128	1120	Regile Inceded (Carriel)	
5	Fature 1804	internation)	0641M01-0128.83	DOV.	100 10 126	1100	Register Accepted (Date Disposit)	
<b></b>	101.04	Intro Instance	007181115.81.02	Chill office	10001062	1000	Rode at # 100 KO10 inggest P-paperpolitie	
<b>C</b>	10.00	information -	00138111438.38	Administrative	10071118	1900	Rombi calmitutini	
E	V600 . Lab	Information 1	00/120111-0100227	Deside	100128	1100	Fagate Accepted FEED Cleanets	
E	-	Internation.	00H1801 Na101.37	1200 496	1003.343	1000	Note of #10001200 inggets to successfully.	
10		intramation -	00738119434194	11 225 Gebeneget	1000.000	1	29 in 12 2 12 12 20 wher also overhead because of H229 .	
0	Faller TROM	toblomation	00738111231114	2767	1003018	1100	Regilter Acceler/Clinis Channell.	100
E	and .	Information 1	CONTRACT TALES INF	Clot 1/4	1003341	1500	Balle of #10010130 logged in a governing	
<b>F</b>	Famor 2001	internation	08/13811110167	576FC	10010138	1100	Pegate Accepted p1025-Chatraits	
	10.04	information	0071361111111111	102.99	1003281	1107	Register Reaction Jude Chernell - Heal For Assertable	

Event Log
## 3.5 LDAP Servers

The LDAP Servers View provides information about the 5700 VFA connection and registration in an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) online directory. The administrator may list the 5700 VFA and its registered nodes in any one of these online directories.

Server Type	Server Hame	Host Address	Hoot Part	Rotresil Connection Interval	Default Directory	Demain	U
1.5	4.0	Defaul_J.E_Server	388	80	o-Morsson, orgenitatio-WTPerson	0.000	
Exchange	Exchange	Detail Dictorge Serv	308	1	cryv/WM,cryvecipients.cs.+Site_H	Detaut Jonain	Derie.d.
NOS	NOS	Delauf JEDS, Server	358		tour-Organization_Unit (in-Organizati	100 F 100	Detout:
vec2000	4NOH	Detaut_VGK_Server	309	1	ou-Organization, Unit do-Detault_		Octaut.
# Second +			_				11

LDAP Servers View

## 3.6 The Mitel View

The Mitel PBX view provides information on the 3300 ICP(s) to which the 5700 is connected. The following information is listed in this View:

- PBX Name
- PBX Network Address
- Whether the PBX is used with the 5700 VFA or not
- PBX Node ID
- Port
- Open Retry delay

🖶 Administrator:2 - Performance (10.37.200.236) - Mitel PSX						
	PBX Name	Network Address	Use PBX?	Node ID	Part	Open Retry (seconds)
	10.37.208.240	10.37.208.248	P	123	8000	90
100	10.37.208.250	10.37.209.250	R	458	8000	90
+	0.000000		E		9900	90

Mitel PBX View

Mitel Networks 5700 VFA Administrator's Guide

#### **ADMINISTERING THE 5700 VFA** 4

This chapter provides instructions for organizing your 5700 VFA Administrator system so that you can manage your organization's videoconferencing network. The tasks include:

- Setting Up Administrators Editing Nodes
- Status Monitoring
- Setting Up Templates
- Adding Hunting Groups
- Adding an Administrative Group
- Adding a Short Dial Number

#### 4.1 Setting Up Administrators

## Adding an Administrator

At any time, you can register additional administrators to the 5700 VFA. Each administrator must have an administration level (privileges) and a password.

In addition, you can change the privileges and other properties of the registered administrators at any time.



## **•** To add an Administrator



- 1. Click the New Administrator button. The New Administrator Properties dialog box appears.
- 2. Type the Administrator's Name. Click Next.



New Administrator - General

3. Enter the following privileges and security information and then click **Next**:

Administration Level	Det Adi	fines the level of activity allowed for the selected ministrator. The available options are:
		<b>Monitor System -</b> The Administrator may only observe the Main View and the Node Status View.
		<b>View System Properties</b> - The Administrator may only observe the Main View, the Node Status View, and view other nodes' properties.
		<b>Super User -</b> The Super User may change node and system configurations, in addition to the activities allowed for the other options.
Change Password	In t Adi pas	he <b>New</b> box, type a new password for the new ministrator. In the <b>Confirm</b> box, type the new sword again.

Change Fatte	brav			
Seve .				
Douples				
Note: If you le not be change	eve the parameter	d fields blank, for	e percent will	

New Administrator - Administrator Properties

4. Click **Finish** to complete the setup. A new administrator appears in the Main View under the **Administrator** icon.

## **Changing Administrator Properties**

If necessary, you may change the properties of existing administrators.

## To change an administrator node's properties

- 1. In the Main View, expand the Administrator group to view a list of Administrators.
- 2. Double-click an Administrator to open the Properties dialog box.
- 3. Change the appropriate properties. For a description of them, see "Adding an Administrator" on page 4-1.
- 4. Click **OK** to complete the change. If you want to discard the change, click **Cancel**.

## 4.2 Editing Nodes

## **Adding Nodes**

After a node connects to the 5700 VFA, it is added to the 5700 VFA database. The 5700 VFA may automatically accept the registration attempt, require manual registration by the administrator, or reject the attempt.

## **Granting Login Permission**

To receive login requests, the 5700 VFA may be in Open Mode for certain types of nodes, and/or in Closed Mode for all other nodes.

Open Mode	For VCON or Mitel Networks end points, allows automatic login to all Mitel Networks or VCON end points that register with the 5700 VFA (5750 Desktop Video Appliance, 5760 Videoconference Appliance, 5770 Boardroom Conferencing Appliance, Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge, VCON Escort, VCON Cruiser 150/384, VCON MediaConnect 6000/8000).
	For <b>non-Mitel Networks end points</b> , allows automatic login to any non-Mitel Networks H.323 videoconferencing end point that registers.
	For <b>MCUs</b> , allows automatic login to any MCU that registers.
	For <b>Neighboring Gatekeepers (Zones)</b> , allows the 5700 VFA to list any neighboring zones management device (5700 VFA or gatekeeper) that contacts it (see Chapter 9, "Neighboring Zones.").
Closed Mode	The administrator can manually grant login permission to nodes or reject them by ignoring their requests.

For nodes registering in Closed Mode (gateways cannot be registered automatically), a Login Request entry appears on the system tree in the Main View.

Video Contenencing Hero	Nunber/Address	Connection State
🗏 👿 tochexes - au logged in	10.0.3.252	No Calls
E - B Login Requesto	12663	
Mathew Duncan	10.0.1.123	

Login Request Indication

## > To grant login permission

- 1. Expand the Login Request item.
- 2. Right-click the item name and then click Grant Login Permission.

A message appears, asking if you want to register the node now.

MITTEL	5700 Administrator
2	Would you like to whit Deditup 10.0.1.123 (Address: 10.0.1.123, Adar: Mattews Duncar) to the 5700 outlier row 7 If you press DK and cooplete the following Add Woard, if will be added to the option with the properties you set now If you press Cancel or don't complete the Add Wiscast, it will not be added to the option.
	Canoel

Node Registration Request

 Click OK if you want to manually set the node's properties, such as directory number or call forwarding. The Add Wizard appears (for definitions of the node properties, see "Setting End Point 5700 VFA Properties" on page 6-3). The original property values are the default values defined in the node type template (see "Setting Up Templates" on page 4-25).

If you click **Cancel**, the node will not log in, but remains under the Login Requests object until you delete it (and the node stops trying to log in). See the next section, "Deleting a Login Request".

- 4. Change properties according to your specifications, or keep the default settings. When you finish each page of the wizard, click **Next**.
- 5. When you finish the last page, click **Finish**.

The node is registered. It appears as an entry in an appropriately labelled location of the system tree.

**NOTE** If the registering node is a MeetingPoint 4.5 (or higher) station, the login process does not continue automatically after you click **Finish**. Instruct the node to log in again (user must click **Connect**) in order to complete the registration.

## **Deleting a Login Request**

In Closed mode, you may choose to reject login requests.



#### **•** To delete a login request

**Right-click the node and then click Delete Login Request.** Click Yes to confirm.

**NOTE** If the node continues trying to register, ask the user to try logging in to another gatekeeper or to operate stand-alone.

## Setting a Node's Properties

The 5700 VFA and all of its registered nodes have definable properties, or characteristics, which define their functionality and operation. Setting up and maintaining these properties is the key to efficient videoconferencing network management. At any time, an Administrator with Super User privileges can change properties of a registered node.

In addition, the videoconferencing configurations of MeetingPoint 4.5 (and higher) and 5760 VCA end points may also be edited. For MeetingPoint end point configuration, see Appendix A, "MeetingPoint End Point Properties." For 5760 VCA configuration, see Appendix B, "5760 Videoconferencing Appliance End Point Properties."

#### To set a node's properties

- In the Main View, browse the system tree until you find the node that you 1. want to edit. If necessary, click a category's plus sign to expand the tree and display additional items.
- 2. Right-click the node, point to **Property**, and then click the specific property type. The node's Properties dialog box opens to the property type that you clicked.

-or-

Double-click the node. The node's Properties dialog box opens to the General tab.

3. Change any appropriate properties.

If you want to continue to another property group, click that group's tab. In dialog boxes with many tabs, you may have to click the right or left arrow on the tab row to access all of them.

4. Click **OK** to implement all the changes and close the dialog box.

## Finding Nodes and Objects in the Administrator

The Find and Find Next utilities help you search for specific items in the 5700 VFA Administrator. This feature is very useful if your enterprise's network is large and not all nodes are visible in the Administrator application window.

#### Find in Main View

In the Main View, you can search for any words, phrases or numbers in all of the columns.

#### To find nodes and objects in the Main View

- 1. To search the whole system tree, click at the top of the Main View.
- 2. Click the Find button. The Find dialog box appears.



Find Dialog Box

- 3. In the **Find What** box, type a name and/or number.
- 4. If necessary, define additional search parameters:

Match wholeSelect this option to match only complete words orword onlyphrases. For example, if you enter Gate, the search<br/>ignores the word, "Gateway".

If you want to find characters that may be part of a longer word or part of a phrase, deselect this option.

Match exact phrase	Select this option to match only complete phrases. For example, if you enter <b>Gateway Hunting Group</b> , the search ignores any items including only the word, "Gateway".
Match case	Select this option to match items whose capitalization is identical to the item in the <b>Find What</b> box. For example, if you enter <b>GW</b> , the search ignores any items that include "gw" or "Gw".
	To find all matching items, regardless of capitalization, deselect this option.
Find backwards	Select this option to search up the tree from the selected location. To select down the tree, deselect this option.
Find in columns	The Main View has three columns. Select the columns in which to search for the matching items.

5. Click **Find Next**. The first matching item in the Main View is selected. To search for more matching items, click **Find Next** again.



Finding an Item in the Main View

## Find in Other Views

άŝ.

In the 5700 VFA Administrator application's other Views, you can search for the names of entries. The search covers the first column of the table.

## **•** To find entries in other Views

- 1. Open the View in which you want to work.
- 2. Click the Find button. The Find dialog box appears.



## Find Dialog Box

- 3. In the Find What box, type the name of the entry.
- 4. If necessary, define additional search parameters:
- Match caseSelect this option to match items whose capitalization is<br/>identical to the item in the Find What box. For<br/>example, if you enter GW, the search ignores any items<br/>that include "gw" or "Gw".<br/>To find all matching items, regardless of capitalization,<br/>deselect this option.DirectionSelect the direction from the selected entry to search in<br/>the View, Up or Down.
- 5. Click **Find Next**. The first matching entry in the View is selected. To search for more matching entries, click **Find Next** again.

## **Editing Multiple Nodes**

You can select more than one node at the same time and define certain properties with identical values. If the selection of nodes contains more than one node type, only the common properties among them may be changed. Other properties will be unavailable.

#### **>** To edit multiple nodes

- 1. Select the nodes that you want to change, using the standard Windows object selection techniques:
  - To select consecutive nodes, click the first node, press <Shift> and click the last node in the series that you want.
  - To select non-consecutive nodes, click the first node, hold down <Ctrl> and click all the other nodes that you want.
- 2. Right-click one of the selected nodes, and then click **Properties**.

The Properties dialog box appears. Only common properties among the selected nodes are available for change.

5750 Properties (	4 Items) X
Category 200	General Status Cal Forwarding Bandwidth Control Robus   Robus  Ro
Lonvetueion	Linit miningin to 64 🔄 Käps.
2	
Nielwate	OK Cancel Assiv Help

Sample Properties Dialog Box - Multiple Nodes

- 3. Change the appropriate properties. Remember that this change affects all the selected nodes.
- 4. Click **OK** to complete the change.

## **Changing Directory Numbers**

All end points, services, hunting groups, and other registered items are assigned an internal directory number (also called *E.164 number*). Any registered node can call another registered item simply by dialing the destination's directory number. This number is usually only a few digits, and can be adopted from the node's IP address, telephone extension number, or randomly.

The administrator may change the directory numbers of one or a range of several registered nodes.

## **>** To change the directory number of a single node

- 1. Double-click the node. The **General** tab of the node's Properties dialog box appears.
- 2. In the Directory Number box, type the new number. Press OK.

#### To change a range of directory numbers

1. In the Administrator window, find the nodes whose numbers you want to change. If necessary, click a category's plus sign to expand the tree and display additional items.

Select the relevant nodes.

 In the toolbar, click the Change Numbers button. The Change Number Range dialog box appears. The title bar shows the number of nodes in the selected range.



Changing Node Numbering

3. In the **Start Numbering At** box, type the new number for the start of the range.

4. Select Ascending for the numbering range to go up from the number that you typed (for example, 60, 61, 62, 63, ...). This new assignment affects the numbers for all other selected nodes

Select **Descending** for the numbering range to go down from the number that you typed (for example,  $63, 62, 61, 60, \ldots$ ).

5. Click **Update** to implement the number change. On the Administrator tree, the new numbers for the selected nodes appear. From this point, a registered node must dial the new number to complete a call to the respective node.

## **Deleting a Node**

If a node is not relevant to the network anymore, you can delete it from the 5700 VFA



×

## To delete a node

Click the node and then click the **Delete** button.

Click **Yes** to confirm

#### 4.3 Registering 5020/5220 IP Phones

When a 5020/5220 IP Phone is connected to the network on which the 5700 VFA server is active, it will attempt to log in to the 5700 VFA Administrator. Activate the Administrator on the server and your screen should resemble the one shown below

**NOTE** Before registering a 5020/5220 IP Phone, make sure its Video key is programmed (see "To program "Video" settings to a 5020/5220 IP Phone:" on page F-2

Video Conferencing Item	Number/Address	Connection State
🖃 👮 Mitel - su logged in	192.168.15.149	No Calls
🚊 🗗 🗗 Login Requests		
192.168.15.43	192.168.15.43	
5310 IP Conf	192.168.15.44	
⊞		

Administrator screen showing login request

## To add a phone:

- 1. Right-click on the IP address of the requesting set.
- 2. Click Grant Login Permission.

<u>S</u>how in Login Status <u>G</u>rant Login Permission <u>D</u>elete Login Request

Login Properties

3. When the server confirms your selection, click OK.

MITTEL	5700 Administrator	×
٩	Would you like to add Decktop 10.01.123 (Addecs: 10.01.123). Also: Matthew Duncan (Its the 1200 totalen novi 1 If you press DX, and cooplete the following Add Wicard, it will be added to the system with the properties you set novi If you press Cancel or don't complete the Add Wicard, it will not be added to the system.	5
	OK Canoel	

4. In the General Properties dialogue box that appears, the initial description will appear as the phone's Directory Number but a User Name or IP address can be entered instead (when entering an IP address, do not enter leading zeroes). This information will be based on data presented by the phone when it first attempts to register, i.e. IP address, MAC address, etc. Click Next to confirm the description.

- In the Phone Device Properties dialogue box, the following information is listed: phone IP address, phone MAC address, PBX IP address, phone extension number.
- 6. Set Video Settings Properties as follows:
  - Select Show unassigned video endpoints.
     Select Show All Video Endpoints if you want to assign an endpoint to more than one phone.

**NOTE** Ensure the "Enable video for this phone" box is checked.

- If the phone will be used for videconferencing only, without a VIDEO key, select Automatically start video....
- Set the **Call Bandwidth** as measured in kilobits per second.
- Set the Audio Delay (usually not needed). Default is zero. This adds additional audio delay to the audio synchronization automatically configured by the 5700 VFA.

**NOTE** Use the default Audio Delay setting when using Mitel or VCON endpoints.

**WARNING** This manual definition of an endpoint may use the definition from a previously registered phone.

sa Millel Phone	Video Settings Properties	
Enable vide	a for this phone	
- Select video e	ndpoint	
# Shore una	ssigned video endpoints	
C Show all v	ideo-endpeints	
Select NuN		
Call bandwidty Audio-delay-offs	2014 Haps. et 이 국 nill-seconds.	

7. Click Finish when all settings have been defined.

The phone will now be listed (by its IP address) under the Mitel Phones list.

## To change the name of the phone in the list:

1. Right-click on the phone's IP address.



- 2. Select Properties.
- 3. Change the name of the phone in the **Description** field.

192,168,15,43 Pt	operties (Mitel I	Phone)	×
General Phone (	Device   Video Se	tings	
Description :	5020 IP Phone	4	
0K.	Cancel	<u>A</u> asoly	Help

4. Click OK.

#### Status Monitoring ΔΔ

The Administrator application provides a number of views for monitoring the operations of the 5700 VFA and its registered nodes:

- Main View
- Login Status View
- Node Status View
- Event Log.

## Monitoring Nodes in the Main View

The Main View's Connection State column (right side of table) provides status information about the current activity of registered nodes. This column may display nodes' login status, or if nodes are currently in a videoconference and the amount of bandwidth being used.

Escort Systems	703	Logged in
B- 1 5700 Systems David Schor Rackel Nave	704 706	In call: 2'360 Kaps In call: 2'360 Kaps

Indication of Nodes in a Videoconference

## Viewing the Login Status

Use the Login Status View to monitor registration and login procedures for nodes. The table lists nodes that tried to register, but were not given login and registration permission. This table makes it easier to see the login information for specific nodes instead of viewing the entire system tree.



## **•** To open the Login Status table

Click the Login Status View button.

	Login Category	Network Address	Alias	Login Name	Login Status	
	Desktop	212.29.219.213	dento	demo	Login Permission Requested	
Þ	5790 VC	10.0.18.128	Precion/TBCH	PreconTBCH	Login Permission Requested	-
					Login Permission Granted Login Permission Requested	

Login Status View

The Login Status table provides	the following information:
---------------------------------	----------------------------

Login Category	The type of node that tried to register.
Network Address	Address of this node.
Alias	Name of this node.
Login Name	The node's user name, as entered during the login procedure. If the node cannot provide a user name to the 5700 VFA, this space remains blank.
Login Status	Describes what happened when the node last tried to log in to the 5700 VFA.

**NOTE** In the Login Status table, you can grant login permission by clicking the node's Login Status column and then selecting **Login Permission Granted** (see the preceding figure). The node login process continues (see "Adding Nodes" on page 4-4).

## Viewing the Node Status

The Node Status View makes it easier to see the connection information only about specific nodes instead of viewing the entire system tree. You can monitor the following:

- End points
- Gatekeeper
- Administrator nodes
- Gateways
- MCUs
- Neighboring Zones
- LDAP Proxy





- 1. Click the Node Status View button. The Node Status View appears.
- 2. In the main Administrator window, select any number of nodes.

3. Drag the nodes into the Node Status View window. The information about the selected nodes appears in the table.

	Node Description	Node Number	Status	Connection State	Bandwidth (kbps)	Audie Cedec	Video Codec
50	David Schor	1001	2	Talking to 1004	2*360	G.722 64k	H 261 CF
1	<b>Rachel Nave</b>	1004	3	Talking to 1001	2*360	G 722 64k	H.261 CIF
2	Gary Rose	1011	49	Not Logged In	-		(and
	FalconTECH	1009		Logged in	÷.	-	

Node Status Table

	<b>701 Value Fir</b>	ut Application A	deinistenter - i	Administra	fer vice he	in States]		AID X
	The Calk Many	Format \$700 Mil	das Window He	8				
C		日間世	- (* <b>*</b>	×it	- 福 音	8 78 7722	9	
		ROCX	2. 10-1	1100			新田田	
1	S700 Name	\$700 Address	Node Description	Hode Nember	Status	Connection State	Bandwidth Bitest	Audio Cer*
59	Tectpub	10.0.3.252	David Schot	1001	30	Talking to 1004	2*360	0.722.6-
1	Techpub	10.0.3 252	Rachell Nave	1004	30	Taiking to 1001	2*360	6.722.6
3	Techpub	10.0.3.252	Gary Reer	1011	49	Not Logged is		-
-	Techpub	10.0.3.252	FaiconTECH	1009	-00	Logged in		1.000
1	VCON North	10.0.10.130	Jane Mann	1007		Lagged Is	- 144	1 mar 1
2.	VCON North	10.0.10.130	Mike Wilson	1505		Logged In	- LL	-
1	VCON North	10.0.10.130	Bob Chang	3,289		Logged is		-

Node Status Table

4. To go back to the Main Administrator View, click the **Administrator** tab at the bottom of the window.

## Multiple Node Status Tables

You can make more than one Node Status Table to view different groups of nodes.

## **>** To create a new Node Status table

- 1. At the bottom of the Node Status View, click the Add New Tab button.
- 2. Double-click the tab name.
- 3. Press the <Delete> key as many times as required until the default name is deleted.
- 4. Type a new tab name and press <Enter>.

**Ç** 

## **>** To delete a Node Status table

1. Click the tab of the table.



 At the bottom of the Node Status View, click the Remove Tab button. The tab is deleted.

## **Node Status Table Information**

The Node Status View provides the following information:

Node Name	Name for the node - it may be the node's alias or any other arbitrary name.
Node Number	5700 VFA directory number of the node.
Status	Connection status as indicated by icon.
Connection State	Describes the current connection or activity status of the node. For example, this column may indicate that a node is currently in a videoconference.
Bandwidth	Amount of bandwidth that is consumed by the node during the current call. If the node (such as an MCU) is engaged in more than one session, both total and per- session bandwidths appear.
Audio Codec	If the node is in a call, this column indicates the audio transmission standard being used.
Video Codec	If the node is in a call, this column indicates the video transmission standard being used.

## **Event Log Monitoring**

The Event Log displays information about system events and operating conditions. You can view all network events during a time period, events involving a specific node, specific types of events, events of a certain severity level, and more. Refer to it if you need to troubleshoot and to isolate a problem.

## ► To view the Event Log for the 5700 VFA



1. Click the Event Log button.

1. Sec. 1. al.	aread - In	objudi (10.8.)	1257-Eventlag					
and Dated	file .			三 有重印	塑工			
Handled	Aure	Severity	ButeTime	Application Type	Noture the Address	Cade	Fartalle	
Г	PROFILER	riseadon	004301183834	UNLIC	18.879.728	1110	Roader Accepted R111 Chevred.	1
	Falser BOX	Printers (	OD/EDON FEIDERD	4544 KC	18.818.128	1110	Pergater Assessed Enter Dannell	
17	10.08	Frienders	004301103000	5100 VA	1033252	1208	Hards at P 10(0:10:12) togget in oursemplate.	
<b>F</b>		Education 1	0071001103000	Annabelia	10.011.118	1.000	Pando of Hausson	
-	V80-Late	Enformation:	75 68:41 102 14:50	<b>Dentise</b>	1881208	1100	Register Accepted (#123 Diameti)	
17	18104	Private and a local data	007001143827	1707-074	10.0.0202	1288	How at P 1001 200 Room/H-Scoolstate.	
E .		A descentions	OUTION IS NOT	H III Dateteauer	18.8.1.282	1	18Pin 102-101.20 years decontracted because of V38P	
-	Face/EOH	Promotion	054501130114	560 ×C	10.010120	1100	Prophy Accepted (14th-Daniel)	
<b>E</b>	10.44	Edunializati	1071301100110	1750 (84	1333280	1200	How of P 100 10 10 Kopedit excessfull.	
E	Paner MOR	<b>Education</b>	INVESTOR 15/08-001	6060vC	10.016128	1100	Ingele Accepted, WIII Converts	
17	works.	Printmation	0041001100100	1750 (RA	1223252	11.07	Register Paechocichels-Chained - Inst For Administrati	

Event Log View

2. To see events that occurred before those in the table, click the **Prior Events** button.



Q

÷

To see events that occurred after those in the table, click the **Next Events** button.

To update the table and display new events, click the **Refresh** button.

## To view the Event Log for a specific node

- 1. Right-click the node and then click View Events.
- 2. The Event Log opens for the specific node only.

## Changing Record-Keeping Periods

From the Event Log View, you can change the periods of time that the 5700 VFA keeps records of specific types of events.

## **>** To change the record-keeping period

- 1. In the Event Log View's **Event** menu, click **System Logging Settings**. The 5700 VFA **Event Log** properties tab appears.
- 2. Change the appropriate record-keeping periods (see "Event Log" on page 5-24).

## **Event Log Information**

The Event Log provides the following information:

Handled	Indication if the event no longer needs administrator attention.
Name	Name of the node associated with the event.
Severity	Classification of the type of event that occurred. This can determine the level of attention that's required from the administrator.
Date/Time	Date and time that the event occurred.
Application Type	Type of node or group in which the event occurred.
Network Address	IP address of the node or group shown in the Application Type column.
Error Code	Indication of the type of error or event.
Details	Description of the event.

## Filtering the Event Log

You can control the level of information that appears in the Event Log by defining filters according to the details that are important to you. You can set filtering according to all or any combination of the following criteria:

- Severity level
- Application (node type)
- Handled/unhandled events
- Number of displayed records
- Date and time
- IP Address range
- Error code
- Event description.

		· Linate Bess.
a-10.02	Application Issue	Show Handed Events
#Information	Administrator a	Handled grd unhandled events
¥™arving ⊉Sevens	WH 323 Estekseper	C Only handled events
⊋Alam .	CLOAP Proy	Citizen Size
	Desktop	Betieve up to 😒 🛫 records.
ine.		
<ul> <li>Any time</li> </ul>		
Anytine Lat 3	aya	
C Anythise C Last ( → d C	wa 122.3.00.2001 5.32.PM	<u></u> #4  12 J# 2001 5 32 PM <u></u>
Anytine Lat 3 d	12 Jul 2001 5 32 PM	
Any tose Last 3 a Gloston Network A	404 12 Jul 2001 5 32 PM iddess Any addess	<u> </u>

Filtering the Event Log

#### To set Event Log view filters

- ¥a
- 1. In the Event Log, click the **Filter** button. The Filter Records dialog box appears.
- 2. Define the particular filters according to the specific criteria that you require for reducing the possible accounts that you want to check (for definitions of the categories, see "Filtering Criteria" on page 4-23).
- 3. Click OK.

## **•** To save a filter for future use

- 1. In the Event Log, click Create New.
- 2. In the Create New Filter dialog box, type a name for the new filter scheme.
- 3. Click OK.

<b>Create Now Filter</b>		×
Caulo a new Mar :	share bared on the current lifer.	1
Nave of new Mer.	Severe Events Only	_1
	OK Eno	

Saving a Filter Scheme

The scheme name now appears in the Scheme list.

**NOTE** To delete a scheme, select it from the **Scheme** list and click **Delete**.

## Filtering Criteria

This section provides explanations for the various Event Log filtering categories (for definitions of the categories, see "Event Log Information" on page 4-21):

Severity	Set the log to display only certain types of events which affect the network's functioning.
Application Type	Set the log to display only events that occur in specific types of nodes.

Show Handled Events	Show events that are defined as handled (or fixed) or unhandled or both. This category helps you indicate if events no longer need administrator attention.
Query Size	Set the log to display a maximum number of records on
£; £;	the screen. If the log contains more than this number of records, you can click <b>Prior Events</b> and/or <b>Next Events</b> to display them.
Time	Set the log to display only records within a specific time range. Select one of the following options:
	Any time
	□ Up to 60 days before the current day
	A time range according to the following criteria:
	After, Before, Between, On or after, On or before a specific date and time.
	<b>NOTE</b> If you select <b>Between</b> , you have to set an earliest and latest time limit.
	F Before
	Setting a Time Range Filter
	To specify the time limit, click the large down arrow to open a calendar in which you can browse and choose an exact date and year.
Time (con't)	In addition, you can select one-by-one the date, month, year, hour, minute, and/or AM/PM. Then, click the small up or down arrows until the value that you want appears.
Application Network Address	Filters the event log to display events only from nodes whose IP addresses meet the criterion defined here. In the adjacent box, type the address range that fits the phrase selected from the list (for example, clicking <b>Begins with</b> and then typing <b>100.100.100.</b> will display records for accounts whose IP address is in the range

greater than 100.100.100.0).

**Error Code** Indicates the type of error or event that occurred.

**Description** Set the log to display only records whose Details contains, does not contain, ends or begins with (and other criteria) a specific text string.

## 4.5 Setting Up Templates

When you manually grant permission to a new node to register, or if you add a new service, you have to confirm or change the item's properties before the item is added to the 5700 VFA tree and database. The original default properties were set at Mitel Networks production facility.

An administrator with Super User privileges may change various default properties by setting up a template. A template includes the characteristic properties for a type of node or service. Any newly created item in the system will initially have the default properties defined in the template.

Any changes to a template only affect new nodes that you create afterwards - they do not affect existing nodes.

The 5700 VFA comes with default templates:

- 5720 VCB
- 5720 VCB Service
- 5760 VCA
- Accord Gateway
- Accord Meeting Room
- Ad-hoc Permission Group
- Desktop
- Gateway
- Gateway Service
- Gateway Service Hunting Group

- H.323 End Point
- Hunting Group
- MCU
- MCU Services
- MCU Permission Group
- MITEL Phone
- Permanent Non-registered Device
- Short Dial
- Zone

## **Editing a Template**



1. In the Main view, expand the **Templates** group to display all available templates.



List of Templates

2. Right-click a template, and then click Properties.

The Properties dialog box appears.

- Change the appropriate properties (see the list on the previous page for the locations of the relevant properties explanations). If applicable, click on other tabs in the dialog box to change more properties.
- 4. Click **OK** to complete the change. If you want to discard the change, click **Cancel**.

# 4.6 Adding Hunting Groups

A hunting group includes a series of nodes that may be grouped together within an organization for a variety of reasons, but may be reached through one common number. When the common number is dialed, the 5700 VFA searches for a free node.

For example, if the first node is busy, the system tries to contact the next node, and so on. If all nodes are engaged, the 5700 VFA rejects the call.

The most important characteristic of a hunting group is the order in which calls are routed to members of the group. When you create a hunting group, you can determine the "hunting" order and method (see "Hunting Group Properties" on page 4-30).

Gateway Service hunting groups operate under a similar principle. You can set the order in which gateway services are requested when the hunting group's access number is dialed (see "Gateway Service Hunting Groups" on page 7-9).

## **>** To create a hunting group



- 1. Click the **New Hunting Group** button. The New Hunting Group Properties wizard opens.
- 2. Change properties according to your hunting group requirements. To move to the next properties page, click **Next**. For explanations about the various properties, see pages 4-28 to 4-31.
- 3. Click **Finish**. In the Main View, the new hunting group appears under the Hunting Group object.

## **General Properties**

The **General** page appears when you open the Hunting Group wizard. It contains identity information about the hunting group.

	Lenn.		
Directory Nymber	(Juean)		
Decomptour	Sales		

Hunting Group - General Properties

Set the following General Properties:

Directory Number	The number to be dialed in order to call this hunting group.
Description	Description or name for the group. This name appears in the Main View under the Hunting Groups object.

## **Call Forward Properties**

The Call Forward page appears when you open the Hunting Group wizard. Use it to set call forwarding on no answer.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the Call Forward settings of the 3300 ICP).

- No Bessone	rding Propertie	•	×
When this group is not responding, dial this number.	ľ	-	
< Back.	Next >	Cancel	Help

Hunting Group - Call Forward Properties

## **Hunting Group Properties**

In the Hunting Group Properties page, you can set the default hunting method, place specific nodes in the hunting group, and set the preferred order of hunting.

escepton	Nureber	· Have	
David Sohor	706	1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	
Janes Madison	754	Concerned.	
James Brown	705	Davo	
Deno Roon	703	- Marriel	
Gay Role	702		
Charle Brown	700		
Jerry Hancock	707		
Mathew Duncen	701		
1014	1014		
1013	1013		
1012	1012	10 C	
1010	1010	•	

Hunting Group Properties

Set hunting group properties as follows:

Calling Rule	Default "hunting" method		
	<b>Least Recently Called -</b> Calls are routed first to the node which has not received a call in the longest time.		
	<b>Circular</b> - Calls are routed first to the node in the hunting group list that follows the last node that was called.		
	<b>Fixed Order -</b> The search starts at the first node in the hunting group list, then the second node, third node, and so on, until a free node is found.		
	<b>Simultaneous -</b> Simultaneous calls go to every member of the hunting group. Upon the first acceptance of a call, all the other calls disconnect.		
Description/ Number	Select the nodes that will belong to this hunting group.		

## Setting the Hunting Order

In the New Hunting Group Properties dialog box, selected nodes are automatically placed in the top part of the list. You can then move them to different places in the hunting order. Their locations in the list, together with the Calling Rules setting, determines the hunting order.

#### To set the hunting order of the selected nodes

1. Click the name (*not* the check box) of a selected node. To move the node up and down the list to its designated place, click **Move Up** or **Move Down** as many times as necessary.

Repeat this step for as many nodes as necessary.

2. Click **OK** to implement the settings and close the dialog box.

## **Hunting Group LDAP Properties**

In the LDAP page, you can define the hunting group's registration, if applicable, in an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server.

Open Ite (1)	- Lourage	to me al L	DAP severa	brain.	
Entry in					

Hunting Group - LDAP Properties

Create an Entry in Server	The central LDAP server that contains the subdirectory in which the hunting group should be listed. The Super User must create this subdirectory as a level within 5700 VEA his subdirectory as a level within
Entry is:	Name or number of the hunting group's entry in the directory.

## **Additional ID Properties**

In addition to its directory (E.164) number, a hunting group may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 ID. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable. For example, the Description entered in the **General** page will appear as an Additional ID as an H.323 ID.

For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

## 4.7 Adding an Administrative Group

You can create Administrative Groups of nodes that reflect the needs of the enterprise's organization. Administrative groups in the Main View can help maintain a visual structure for nodes and the teams and departments to which they belong. This also makes it easier to set common end point properties within a team or department, such as limiting the available bandwidth for the group.

For example, you can create groups for Management, Sales, Finance, R&D, or others and place end points accordingly.

## **>** To create an administrative group



1. Click the **New Administrative Group** button. The New Group wizard appears.

lew Group - Ger	seral Properties	
Desception	F	
	Finih Card	el Help

New Administrative Group Properties

- 2. In the **Description** box, type a name for the group and click **Finish**. This name will appear on the system tree.
- 3. To create more groups, repeat steps 1 and 2.

- To see the created groups in the Main View, expand the Groups object. 4.
- **NOTE** You can also add administrative subgroups as branches under other created groups. To do this, select an existing administrative group before clicking the Add Administrative Group button.

## To place nodes into an administrative group

- 1 In the Main View, select one or more nodes.
- 2 Drag the nodes to the administrative group.

Video Conterencing Nem	Number/Addens	Connection State
🖃 😰 technus - su logged in	10.0.10.96	No Cally
E Caupa		
E Finance		
- 1 Management		
- D RIAD		
10-C Sales		
Charle Brown	701	LoggedIn
- AG Sharon Daten	704	LoggedIm
- Mathew Duncan	702	LoggedIn
David Schor	700	LoggedIn

Sample Administrative Group

## **Changing Group Member Properties**

Administrative groups make it easier to control end point properties that need to be common within a team or department, such as limiting the available bandwidth for the members of a group.



## To change common properties for all group members

1. Right-click the group name, point to Member Property, and click the specific property type.

A Properties dialog box for all group members opens to the property type that you clicked. Common properties among the group members are available for change.

- 2. Change the appropriate properties. Remember that this change affects all the group members.
- Click **OK** to complete the change. If you want to discard the change, click 3. Cancel
## 4.8 Adding a Short Dial Number

A Short Dial Number is a number, that when dialed, is routed to another specific registered user. It ideally is used as an easy-to-remember number intended to reach a department or a location instead of a specific person. It can also be used to include ISDN entries in the network and online directories (LDAP).

For example, you can set up a Short Dial Number, "444", that reaches a sales representative whose personal directory number is "4792". All calls dialed to "444" would automatically be forwarded to "4792".

#### ▶ To add a Short Dial number



- 1. In the Main View's toolbar, click the New Short Dial button. The New Short Dial Wizard appears.
- 2. Change properties according to your short dial requirements. To move to the next properties page, click **Next**. For explanations about the various properties, see the following subsections.
- 3. Click **Finish**. In the Main View, the new Short Dial entry appears under the Short Dial Numbers object.

## **General Properties**

The **General** page appears when you open the New Short Dial wizard. It contains identity information about the entry.

Description	Juocal Sales	

Short Dial - General Properties

Set the following General Properties:

Directory Number	The number to be dialed in order to call the user that this entry represents.
Description	Description or name for the entry. This name appears in the Main View under the Short Dial Numbers object.

#### **Call Forwarding Properties**

In the **Call Forwarding** tab, select the user who will receive any videoconference calls dialed to the Short Dial number.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the Call Forward settings of the 3300 ICP).

called, dial this number	EDG2 - David S	
	ICCOPPEND.	

Short Dial - Call Forwarding Properties

## **LDAP** Properties

The **LDAP** tab provides information about the Short Dial number's registration, if applicable, in an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server. For information about nodes' LDAP Properties, see "LDAP Properties" on page 6-14.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the LDAP settings of the 3300 ICP).

### **Additional ID Properties**

In addition to its directory (E.164) number, a Short Dial number may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 Alias. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable. For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

Mitel Networks 5700 VFA Administrator's Guide

# 5 SETTING 5700 VFA SYSTEM PROPERTIES

5700 VFA servers have system properties that define their operation. In the 5700 VFA Properties dialog box, the properties are divided into various categories:

5700 VFA	Connection, System Information, Dial Plan, LDAP Settings See page 5-2.
Call Control	System Bandwidth Control, Call Settings, Ad-hoc Resources See page 5-10.
Security	Security Mode, License, Non-registered Devices See page 5-15.
H.323 Gatekeeper	Zone Settings, Advanced Settings See page 5-20.
Reporting	Billing, Event Log See page 5-23.

- ► To define 5700 VFA Server system properties
  - 1. In the Administrator window, right-click the 5700 VFA node at the top, point to **Property** (opening another menu), and click the specific property type.

-or-



Click the 5700 VFA node and then click the Display Properties button.

- 2. In the Properties dialog box, change properties according to the system's specifications. To set different types of system properties, click the appropriate category icon on the left side of the dialog box, and then click the tab at the top of the dialog box. For explanations about the various properties, see the above list for their locations.
- 3. To implement the change and proceed to another set of 5700 VFA properties, click **Apply** and then the appropriate category icon and tab.
- 4. To implement all the changes and close the dialog box, click **OK**.

#### Chapter 5 Setting 5700 VFA System Properties

#### 5.1 5700 VFA Properties

In the 5700 VFA system Properties dialog box, click the 5700 VFA icon to access the following property pages:



**Connection** 



- Dial Plan
- □ LDAP Settings

#### **Connection Properties**

The Connection tab contains information about the 5700 VFA Administrator application's connection to the 5700 VFA.

Local 5700 - 127.0	1.0.1 Properties (5700)	×
Category	Connection System Info Dial Plan LDAP Settings	
	Automatically Connect at Administrator Startup.	
5700	5700 Address 127.0.0.1 P Port 26005	
28	Connection State: Connected	
2	Status Logged in	
ISDN Call Routing	Advanced	1
۵.	Network Connection P Dreck if 5700 is online every 150 🛨 seconds	1
	Nessage acknowledge timeout 15 👚 records	J
н.323 Сайна 📮	OK Cancel Assly Help	

5700 VFA Connection Properties

Set the connection properties as follows:

Automatically Connect at Administrator Startup	Select this option if you want to connect to this 5700 VFA automatically whenever you start the Administrator application.
5700 VFA Name	Type any identifying name for the 5700 VFA. This name does not affect the operation of the system.
5700 VFA Address	IP address or DNS name of the 5700 VFA.
Port	TCP/IP port number. Automatically provided by the system.
Connection State	Informs you if the 5700 VFA Administrator application is connected, trying to connect, or not trying to connect to the 5700 VFA.
Login	Provides information about the current login state:
User	The administrator name.
Level	Level of administration privileges permitted to the User.
Status	Current state of the login attempt.

Clicking Advanced displays the following properties:

#### Network Connection

Check if 5700 VFA is online	Select if you want the Administrator application to periodically check that the 5700 VFA is still connected, when there is no traffic over the connection.
	Next to that property, select the number of seconds between checks if there is no activity over the connection.
Message Acknowledge Timeout	Select the number of seconds that the Administrator application waits to receive an update response from the 5700 VFA. After this interval, a message states that the 5700 VFA did not respond.

## System Info

The **System Info** tab provides information about the installation of the current 5700 VFA version. Provide this information if you contact Mitel Networks Technical Support.



5700 VFA Information

Build Number 5700 VFA Running Since The number and date of the 5700 VFA software version.

Date and time when the 5700 VFA started operating.

#### **Dial Plan**

In the **Dial Plan** tab, define how the 5700 VFA assigns directory numbers (E.164type) to registered end points and other nodes. Entering directory numbers are a convenient way for registered users to dial other nodes.

This tab also includes the names of the supplemental exchange functions and the default Telephony User Interface (TUI) numbers that the end point may dial to activate each of them. You may change the number for any of the functions.

For more information about how end points use exchange functions, see the *Mitel Networks 5700 Voice First Application (5700 VFA) End Point's Guide*.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the Dial Plan settings of the 3300 ICP).



Dial Plan Properties

Set directory numbering as following:

Node numbering (E.164) starts at	This number is the starting point for assigning directory numbers to registering nodes. You can provide for two, three, four, etc. digits for numbering nodes.	
	For example, if this number is "700", new nodes will receive the first 3-digit number available between 700 and 999. To increase the numbering capacity (according to the license key code's specification), you can specify a larger 3-digit range or add a fourth digit.	
End Points' E.164 Numbering Request		
If not used, accept	Select to grant any E.164 number requests, if available, by registering end points.	
requested number	If deselected, the 5700 VFA assigns directory numbers only according to the Node numbering definition above, and rejects all user E.164 numbering requests.	
lf already used		
Assign new number	Select to accept the registration request, but to assign a directory number according to the Node numbering definition above.	
Reject login request	Select to reject the registration request if the specified E.164 number is already assigned to another node.	

The Exchange Functions table lists the available functions and their corresponding TUI numbers.

#### **>** To change the TUI number of an exchange function

Click in the **Number** column of the entry that you want to change.

Delete the previous number and type a new number.

To replace other numbers, repeat this step as many times as necessary.

**NOTE** MeetingPoint 4.5 and higher provides access to call pickup, forwarding and transfer functions from the Conference Panel.

The available functions are:

Gateway Service	For starting an ISDN videoconference over a gateway. The end point must enter this number, followed by the ISDN channel numbers, and then click <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is <b>9</b> .
Camp	For locking a call (or call transfer) at a destination endpoint that, at the same time, is engaged in another videoconference.
	The default value is <b>*41</b> .
Pickup	For picking up a call that's intended for any destination for which the end point has pickup permission. The end point enters this number and then clicks <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is <b>*17</b> .
Specific Pickup	For picking up a call that's intended for a specific destination (for which the end point has pickup permission). The end point enters this number, followed by the directory number of the destination end point, and then clicks <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is <b>*19</b> .
Busy Forward	If the end point is busy in a videoconference, the 5700 VFA forwards all incoming calls for it to an alternate destination. To activate, the end point enters this number, followed by the directory number of the alternate destination, and then clicks <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is <b>*71</b> .
No Answer Forward	If the end point does not answer, the 5700 VFA forwards a call to an alternate destination. To activate, the end point enters this number, followed by the directory number of the alternate destination, and then clicks <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is <b>*70</b> .

## Chapter 5 Setting 5700 VFA System Properties

Unconditional Forward	The 5700 VFA forwards ALL calls intended for the en point to an alternate destination. To activate, the end point enters this number, followed by the directory number of the alternate destination, and then clicks <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is <b>*72</b> .
Ad-hoc Conference	For inviting additional users to an open point-to-point videoconference. The end point enters this number, followed by the directory number of the target end point, and then clicks <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is *77.
	<b>NOTE</b> Expansion to ad-hoc videoconference is available only for licensed users of the Conference Control Option. If you want to ad this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.
Transfer	For transferring an open videoconference to another en point (and disconnecting from the transferring end point). The transferring end point enters this number, followed by the directory number of the target end point, and then clicks <b>Dial</b> .
	The default value is <b>*45</b> .

## **LDAP Settings**

In the **LDAP Settings** tab, enable the 5700 VFA to periodically update its registered users in connected LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) online directories. For more information about LDAP, see Chapter 10, "Registering with LDAP Directories."

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the LDAP settings of the 3300 ICP).

Local 5700 - 1273	1.0.1 Properties (5700) X
Calingsry	Connection System Into Dial Plan LDAP Settings   F Enable update of LDAP Servers  Prosy Pending Messages  Trigger time: 10 minutes
ISDN Cal Rousing	Time to Live: 1440 😭 minute: Open the LDAP Servers Were to see all LDAP server details.
Construction of the second sec	
H-323 Galacia	OK Cancel Acody Help

LDAP Settings Properties

Set LDAP Settings as follows:

Enable Update of LDAP Servers	Select to enable the 5700 VFA to update its registered users information in the LDAP directories.
Prefix E.164 numbers with local zone number	If neighboring zones are included in your online directories, select this option to append zone numbers to the directory numbers of all listed nodes.

#### Proxy Pending Messages

If no communication was received from the LDAP directory after a certain interval, the 5700 VFA asks the LDAP Proxy server if its directory list (for the 5700 VFA registered users) requires updating.

Trigger Time	Enter the interval between update request messages sent by the 5700 VFA to the LDAP Proxy server.
Time to Live	Enter the interval for discarding an update request message that is not received by the LDAP Proxy server.
LDAP Servers View	For information about the available LDAP servers, click this link. The LDAP Servers table appears, displaying location and access information about the available servers.

**NOTE** If you update the 5700 VFA LDAP settings, you must also update the same configuration settings in the LDAP server (see Chapter 10, "Registering with LDAP Directories").

## 5.2 Call Control Properties

In the 5700 VFA system Properties dialog box, click the Call Control icon to access the following property pages:





Ad-hoc Resources

## **Bandwidth Control**

In the **Bandwidth Control** tab, define how the 5700 VFA manages the available bandwidth within its zone.

#### Setting 5700 VFA System Properties Chapter 5



Local 5700 VFA Bandwidth Control Properties

Set bandwidth control properties as follows

Network Bandwidth	Total amount of bandwidth available to the LAN.
Limit total bandwidth of 5700 VFA calls	Select to define the percentage of total network bandwidth to be allocated for calls managed by the 5700 VFA.
Limit maximum number of calls to	Select to define the maximum number of videoconferences managed by this 5700 VFA, that can carry on at the same time. The amount of open videoconferences cannot exceed the bandwidth limit defined above.

### **Call Settings**

The **Call Settings** tab includes properties defining call connection throughout the videoconferencing network.

Local 5700 - 1273	1.0.1 Properties (5700)	×
Calegory	Bandwidth Cantool Call Settings Adhoo Resources	
	AdHoc Conference Revert to point to point call when 2 parties remain. Walt The the seconds before reverting to point-to-point.	
	Maximum Call Redirections	
ISDN Cell Rousing	C Unlined	-
Ceculty Seculty		
H 323 Galera 📮	OK Cancel Assly Help	

Call Settings Properties

Set Call Settings properties as follows:

distributor.

Ad-hoc Conference

Revert to point- to-point call when 2 parties remain		Select to return to a point-to-point call when only two parties remain in an ad-hoc videoconference	
Wait before to poin	_seconds reverting it-to-point	After a third party disconnects, the videoconference will revert to a point-to-point session after this interval.	
NOTE	Expansion to ad-hoc videoconference is available only for licensed users of the Conference Control Option. If you want to add this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks		

#### Maximum Call Redirections

redirections	Select the maximum number of times that a call can be forwarded sequentially to other nodes before the call is cancelled.
Unlimited	Select to allow calls to be forwarded to as many destinations as necessary until they are answered.

### Ad-hoc Resources

The Ad-hoc Resources table contains a list of MCU services registered with the 5700 VFA, together with the MCU with which they are associated. Select the services that the 5700 VFA may use to initiate an ad-hoc videoconference.

**NOTE** Expansion to ad-hoc videoconference is available only for licensed users of the Conference Control Option. If you want to add this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.



Available Ad-hoc Resources

Chapter 5 Setting 5700 VFA System Properties

## 5.3 ISDN Routing Properties

In the 5700 VFA system Properties dialog box, click the ISDN Routing icon to access the following property pages

□ System Location

Dialing Prefixes

**NOTE** You cannot make an ISDN call in Voice First mode.

## **System Location**

In the System Location tab, enter the country and area code of the 5700 VFA.

Local 5700 - 127.0	1.0.1 Properties (S700)	×
Category	System Location Dialing Prefixes	
2	Enter the country and area codes in which your \$700 secides:	
	Area code: 613	
ISDN Call Routing		
Contraction (Contraction)		
N 323 G # 10 P	OK Cancel Apply Help	

Local 5700 VFA System Location Properties

## **Dialing Prefixes**

In the Dialing Prefixes tab, enter the dialing prefixes for long distance and international calls.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the Dialing Prefix settings of the 3300 ICP).

Local 5700 - 127.	1.0.1 Properties (5700)	×
Category	System Location Dialing Prefixes	
E T	Enter the protoco: used for long distance and international calls. The 5700 uses then to determine the ISDN gateway call path.	
Cal Control	9011	
ISDN Cal Rousing	Long Distance Pheliaes	
Carlos Seculty	211	
H: 323 Galanta 📮	OK Cancel Apply Help	

Local 5700 VFA Dialing Prefixes Properties

## 5.4 Security Properties

In the 5700 VFA system Properties dialog box, click the Security icon to access the following property pages:





Non-registered Devices

## **Security Mode**

In the **Security Mode** tab, set the properties for restricting login to specific users. You can set up the 5700 VFA in any or all of the available Open Modes, or in Closed Mode to all nodes.

#### Chapter 5 Setting 5700 VFA System Properties



5700 VFA Security Mode

Set the security mode as follows:

System Security Mode

Open Mode	Select to allow automatic login privileges to various types of nodes, which are listed below this option. A deselected type must be manually granted or refused login permission by the administrator
Mitel Networks end points	Select to automatically accept Mitel Networks or VCON systems that register (5750 DVA, 5760 VCA, 5770 BCA, 5720 VCB, VCON Escort, VCON Cruiser 150/384, VCON MediaConnect 6000/8000).
Non- Mitel Networks end points	Select to automatically log in any non-Mitel Networks H.323 videoconferencing node that registers.
MCUs	Select to automatically log in any MCU that registers.
Neighboring Gatekeepers (Zones)	Select to automatically list other 5700 VFA and Gatekeepers that the local 5700 VFA calls or that contact it. In addition, this selection enables registered 5700 VFA nodes to receive calls from other zones. These zones appear automatically in the Main View.

SIP User Agents	Select to automatically log in any SIP User Agent that registers.
Closed Mode	Select to restrict login privileges. All nodes that attempt to register must be granted login permission manually or rejected by the administrator.
Login Status View	Click this link to display the Login Status Table. The far right column of the table shows the login status for specified nodes. For more details about the Login Status Table, see "Viewing the Login Status" on page 4-16.
Unregistered Versions	Allow versions that are not registered via the software upgrade to log in.

#### License

The **License** tab shows the number of registered users that the 5700 VFA is licensed to service. If you need to increase these numbers, contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.



License Properties

$\sim$		••
( . )	na	へょもい
Ua.	va	LII V

Max. Number of Users	Maximum number of nodes that this 5700 VFA is permitted to register, according to its current license.
Max. Number of Concurrent Calls	Maximum number of registered nodes that can be engaged in calls at one time.
Expiration Date	Depending on your license, this will be either <b>Never</b> or the date that your 5700 VFA license expires. If your license is temporary, see "Installing the 5700 VFA Server" on page 2-3 for information about updating your license.

#### **Conference Control Option**

Option Installed	Indicates if your 5700 VFA includes <i>Ad-hoc</i> <i>Videoconferencing</i> and <i>Remote Call Initiation and</i> <i>Hangup</i> .
Expiration Date	Depending on your license, this will be either <b>Never</b> or the date that this license expires.
Max. Number of Ad-hoc Conferences	The number of simultaneous ad-hoc videoconferences allowed.

Video Conference Bridge

Number of VCB Conferences	The number of simultaneous ad-hoc videoconferences managed by the 5720 VCB allowed.
Expiration Date	Depending on your license, this will be either <b>Never</b> or the date that this license expires.
Reporting Option	
Feature Supported	Indicates if your 5700 VFA includes compilation of call records for billing and asset management reports.
Expiration Date	Depending on your license, this will be either <b>Never</b> or the date that this license expires.

License Key	
Show Key	Click to view the current key code for this 5700 VFA.
New Key	Your initial key code is valid for 30 days. To extend it, or to purchase a key code for more users, send the file, <i>c:\Program Files\Vcon\userkey.txt</i> , to your local Mitel Networks distributor. You will then receive the appropriate key without time restrictions.
	You will receive a new <i>userkey.txt</i> file from your Mitel Networks distributor. To apply the new key, click this button, browse to select the file and click <b>Open</b> .

#### **Non-Registered Devices**

In the **Non-Registered Devices** tab, define how the 5700 VFA allows registered end points to engage in videoconferences with nodes that are unable to register with the 5700 VFA.



Non-Registered End Point Settings

Set the properties as follows:

Maximum number of<br/>non-registeredMaximum<br/>that may<br/>registered

Maximum number of non-registered end points that may be engaged in videoconferences with registered users.

Maximum bandwidth for calls with nonregistered devices Select the limit on the amount of bandwidth (in Kbps) that may be allocated to these videoconferences. The value must be a multiple of 100 (such as 200, 5000, 999000).

## 5.5 H.323 Gatekeeper Properties

In the 5700 VFA system Properties dialog box, click the H.323 Gatekeeper icon to access the following property pages:

**Zone Settings** 



## **Zone Settings**

In the **Zone Settings** tab, define the method of search that the 5700 VFA uses when a registered 5700 VFA node dials a party in a different zone (*neighbor node*).

Local 5700 - 1273	1.0.1 Properties (5700)	ĸ
Category	Zone Settings Advanced Settings	
2	Search Policy if a dated address is not found C Don't search in other Zones. C Search other zones:	
	First tay: Multicast location sequeds  Then tay: Defined neighbor zones Then tay: Den't tay anymore	
ISDN Cal Routing	Location Request Reply Timeout: 10 🚽 records.	
H 323 G at a s	OK Cancel Assly Help	

5700 VFA Gatekeeper Zone Settings

#### Search Policy

**If a dialed address is not found**, the 5700 VFA will continue (or not) to search for that address according to one of the following policies:

**Don't search in** The 5700 VFA will reject the call without searching in other zones.

Search other zones	The 5700 sends out search requests according to the defined search criteria. The call is connected to the first zone that sends a positive response (party found) to the 5700 VFA.
Defined Neighbor Zones	The 5700 VFA only sends search requests to zones that are listed in the 5700 VFA Administrator, or "known" to the 5700 VFA. The call is connected to the first zone that sends a positive response (party found) to the 5700 VFA.
Multicast Location Requests	The 5700 VFA initially send search requests throughout the connected network(s) using the Multicast method.
Search for disconnected nodes in other zones	If a call is dialed to an 5700 VFA node that is currently not logged in, the 5700 VFA continues to search for that node in other known zones.
Location Request Reply Timeout	Select the maximum interval for the 5700 VFA to receive a reply from the dialed destination's gatekeeper. If this interval passes before the 5700 VFA receives this reply, the call is disconnected.

## **Advanced Settings**

In the **Advanced Settings** tab, set the intervals at which the 5700 VFA activates various time-outs.



5700 VFA Gatekeeper Advanced Settings

Set Capabilities Timeout	Select the maximum interval for registered end points to receive the H.323 capabilities of the dialed destination. If this interval passes before the end point receives this information, the 5700 VFA disconnects the call.
Close Channel Timeout	Select the maximum time for H.323 logical channels to close when a meeting ends.
Check if device is online	Select the interval for checking if all registered nodes are connected to the 5700 VFA. At this time, the 5700 VFA polls the devices. If it does not receive a response from a node, the node is logged off.
Override device keep-alive period	Select to use the 5700 VFA polling interval instead of any intervals that may have been defined in individual nodes.

## 5.6 Reporting Properties

In the 5700 VFA system Properties dialog box, click the Reporting icon to access the following property pages:

Billing

Event Log

#### Billing

**NOTE** Compilation of call records is available only for licensed users of the Reporting Option. If you want to add this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.

In the **Billing** tab, select **Enable Billing** to list all videoconferences and audio calls within the local zone in a Call Details Record (CDR).



**Billing** Properties

For more information about CDRs and call accounting, see **Getting Started>Monitoring System Status>Call Accounting** in the 5700 VFA online help.

## **Event Log**

In the **Event Log** tab, define the length of time that the 5700 VFA keeps records of specific types of events.

Local 5700 - 127.	0.0.1 Properties (5700)	×
Category	Billing Event Log	
73 -	Delete Information Records After 📓 🚔 Days.	
Call Control	Delete Warning Records After. 7 🚔 Days.	
<u> </u>	Delete Severe Records 7 👲 Days	
ISDN Call Routing	Delete Alam Flecced: After: 7 🛨 Days	
Ċ)	To view events open the Event Log View.	
Seculty		
12		
H.323 Gatekeeper		
5	OK Proved Auto Little	
Reporting	UK Lancel //SSS/ Help	

Event Log Properties

Set record-keeping periods as follows:

Delete Informatory Records After	Amount of time until informative records are deleted from the log.
Delete Warning Records After	Amount of time until warning records are deleted from the log.
Delete Severe Records After	Amount of time until severe error records are deleted from the log.
Delete Alarm Records After	Amount of time until alarm records are deleted from the log.
Event Log View	To view the event log, click this link

# 6 DEFINING END POINT NODES

End point nodes can represent several different types of users who log in to the 5700 VFA and require its services. This chapter provides explanations for defining registered VCON MeetingPoint, Group System end points, or non-Mitel Networks or VCON videoconferencing applications.

The videoconferencing system configurations of registered VCON MeetingPoint 4.5 (and higher) end points (5750 DVA, 5760 VCA, Escort, Cruiser, and MediaConnect 8000) may be viewed and changed from the 5700 VFA. For more information see Appendixes A and B, respectively.

## 6.1 Setting Up an End Point

In order to register, an end point contacts the 5700 VFA (see "Granting Login Permission" on page 4-4). If login permission is granted automatically (Open Mode), the end point retains the default 5700 VFA properties. These default properties may be viewed or changed in the following templates:

- Desktop template (for Mitel Networks 5750 DVA, VCON Escort and VCON Cruiser systems)
- 5760 VCA template
- H.323 end point template (for MeetingPoint 4.01 and non-MITEL end points).

When you grant login permission manually, you can register the node with the default 5700 VFA properties or set the properties during the login process.

**NOTE** For information about rejecting a login request, see "Deleting a Login Request" on page 4-6.

#### To set up an end point's properties

1. After login permission is granted:

**Open Mode** In the Administrator window, registered Mitel Networks end points appear under the **Mitel Networks Systems** group. If enabled, non-Mitel Networks end points appear under the **H.323 End Points** group. Doubleclick the new end point to set up its properties.

**Closed Mode** The New End Point Wizard appears.

#### Chapter 6 **Defining End Point Nodes**

- 2. Change properties according to your system specifications. To set different types of end point properties, click the appropriate tab at the top of the dialog box (in the New End Point Wizard, click Next to advance to the next properties page). For explanations about the various properties, see "Setting End Point 5700 VFA Properties" on page 6-3.
- 3. To implement all the changes and close the dialog box, click **OK** (in the last page of the New end point Wizard, click Finish).

## Login Attempt by Duplicate Users

The same User Name may not be logged in to the 5700 VFA from more than one end point at the same time.

In case of a duplicate login attempt from a MeetingPoint 4.5 (or higher) end point, the user is given the choice of:



Continuing to log in using the same name, causing the other end point to be disconnected from the server

Logging in using a different User Name.



Duplicate User Login Message



Message on Disconnected End Point

**NOTE** For other VCON or Mitel Networks and non-VCON or Mitel Networks end points, duplicate login attempts are rejected without explanation from the 5700 VFA.

## 6.2 Setting End Point 5700 VFA Properties

The administrator can set 5700 VFA properties for all videoconferencing end points. 5700 VFA end point properties define how the end points operate as parts of the 5700 VFA videoconferencing network.

**NOTE** If an end point logs in during Closed Mode, these properties are also set by the administrator during the initial registration process.

## **General Properties**

The General tab contains identity information of the selected end point.

happy I Propertie	s (5750)	×
Category	General Statue Call Forwarding Bandwidth Control Picku	·
•	Directory Number : 1008	
570	Description: Poppy 1	
	H 323 Addess	1
	Alian : [happy 1 Type: [H.32310 Y	
Conversation	Natural datases and the sound of the second se	1
2	D 3431 share (112 39, 15, 56	
- <u>~</u>	BURG HUNDER HELE MORE DUZ	
	Change login properties	
User Data		
무		
Nahazik	OK Cancel Apply Help	

Mitel Networks Desktop End Point - General Properties

The General Properties tab contains the following properties:

Directory Number	Internal directory number (E.164 number) assigned to the end point. Any other end point registered with this 5700 VFA can call this end point by dialing this number.
Description	Identity or description for the end point. This name will appear in the Main View after the login process is finished.
Alias	The end point's alias name.

#### Chapter 6 Defining End Point Nodes

Туре	The type of address used by the end point for registering with the 5700 VFA.
Additional IDs page	Click this link to view any additional IDs that have been configured for this end point.
Network Address	IP address of the end point.
Build Number	<b>For MeetingPoint 4.5 and higher version only</b> Version information for the end point's videoconferencing application.
Change login properties	<b>For MeetingPoint 4.5 and higher version only</b> For changing the end point's 5700 VFA login password. This change takes effect the next time the end point logs in.
	1. In the <b>New</b> box, type a new password for the end point.
	2. In the <b>Confirm</b> box, type the new password again.

### **Status Properties**

The Status Properties page displays the most recent dates that the selected node logged in and out of the 5700 VFA.



H.323 End Point - Status Properties

### **Call Forwarding Properties**

In the **Call Forwarding** tab, set alternate destinations for the 5700 VFA to route calls. Call forwarding for a specific node may be performed:

- At all times (unconditionally)
- □ If the node is busy in another videoconference
- □ If the call is not answered by the node.
- **NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the Call Forward settings of the 3300 ICP).

happy 1 Propertie	s (5750)	×
Category	General Statu: Cal Forwarding Bandwidth Control Picku	•
2	Unconditional Forward  When this extension is called, dial this number	
Conversation	Duny P When this extension is to you, did this number:	
	No Answer	
Cale	When this extension is not answering, dial this number.	
Uer Data	Time extension can ring without 15 seconds being answered	
우리		
Nelwork	OK Cancel Assly Help	

H.323 End Point - Call Forwarding Properties

Set alternate destination numbers for the following conditions:

Unconditional Forward

When this extension is called, dial this number	Select this option to set an alternate destination for every call to this end point. In the list, choose the alternate destination. The forwarding occurs unconditionally and immediately.
	If this option is selected, the <b>Busy</b> and <b>No Answer</b> options are not available.
Busy	
When this extension is busy, dial this number	Select this option to set an alternate destination for a call if this end point is engaged in another call at the same time. In the list, choose the alternate destination. The forwarding occurs immediately.
No Answer	
When this extension is not answering, dial this number	Select this option to set an alternate destination for a call if this node does not answer after a specified time. In the list, select the alternate destination.
Time extension can ring without being answered	Type the number of seconds before the system forwards unanswered calls.

**NOTE** A "\*" entry indicates that the particular forwarding setting is not active.

## **Bandwidth Control Properties**

In the **Bandwidth Control** tab, you can define the permitted amount of bandwidth that the end point can use when communicating with others.

happy 1 Propertie	is (5750) 🛛 🗙
Category	General Status Call Forwarding Bandwidth Control Picku.
Lormetusion Option	Linit minimum to 152 🔮 Kitps. Multicast Bandwidth F7 Linit measure to 384 🔮 Kitps. Default multicast bandwidth 152 🔮 Kitps.
Univ Data	OK Cancel Apply Help

H.323 End Point - Bandwidth Control

Set bandwidth properties as follows:

Allow calls with Non-registered Devices	Select to enable this end point to engage in videoconferences with parties that are not listed or cannot register with the local 5700 VFA.
Limit Number of Concurrent Calls to	Select the number of calls that can go to or from the end point at the same time. This feature is available only to end points that support concurrent videoconferences.
Bandwidth Limits	
Limit Maximum to	Select this option to define the highest amount of bandwidth that the end point may use. In the list, choose the bandwidth.
Limit Minimum to	Choose the lowest amount of bandwidth that the end point may use.

#### Multicast Bandwidth

Limit Maximum to	Select this option to define a bandwidth limit for the end point's participation in an Interactive Multicast videoconference. The end point is not permitted to take part in a multicast session that exceeds this limit.
	In the list, choose the bandwidth limit.
Default Multicast Bandwidth	Choose the default bandwidth for an end point's participation in an Interactive Multicast videoconference.

#### **Pickup Permissions Properties**

In the **Pickup Permissions** tab, you can authorize other end points to answer a video meeting call to the selected end point. Only end points that are registered with the same 5700 VFA may receive pickup permission for each other.

For example, suppose Rachel is a video meeting call's destination. If David has pickup permission for Rachel's calls, he can answer this video meeting call.

In the list, select any number of end points that may pick up a call to this specific end point.

- To grant pickup permission to all end points in the list, click Select All.
- To clear all the selections, click Clear All.



H.323 End Point - Pickup Permissions
## **MCU Services Properties**

In the MCU Services tab, you set the properties for Multiparty Conference Units.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), the settings in this tab are overridden by those programmed in the 3300 ICP.

happy 1 Propertie	es (5750) 🗙
Category 200	Pickup Permissions MCU Services Gateway Services ISDL.
Lanvettation	AdHoc Service Permission Group: Del AdHoc Permission Broup
2 2	Dedicated MCU Service. No Service
Unit Data	OK Cancel Apply Help

H.323 End Point - MCU Services Properties

Set the Services properties as follows:

MCU Service Permission Group	Select the name of the MCU Service Permission group from which this end point can receive services. The available options are all MCU Service Permission groups that are listed in the Main View.
Ad-Hoc Service Permission Group	Select the name of the Ad-hoc Service Permission group from which this end point can receive services. The available options are all Ad-hoc Service Permission groups that are listed in the Main View.
Dedicated MCU Service	Select the name of the dedicated MCU Service Permission group from which this end point can receive services. The available options are all dedicated MCU Service Permission groups that are listed in the Main View.

#### Chapter 6 Defining End Point Nodes

## **Gateway Services Properties**

In the **Services** tab, you can define bandwidth allocation policy for any MCU conferences or calls through a gateway that this end point engages in.

happy 1 Propertie	ts (5750)	×
Category	Pickup Permissions   MCU Services	Baterway Services  ISD
2	Enhanced Gateway Dialing Gateway Service Group: Del Del	Service Hunding Group
Conversation	When a specific Bandwidth is required to the second	ested. Find services with:
2	C Equal or higher Bandwidth. If Equal or lower Bandwidth. If the	not found, lower Bandwidth, not found, higher Bandwidth.
Uer Data	Linit Bandwidth to	Kaps note than requested. Kaps less than requested.
Nativati 🖬	OK Cancel	Apply Help

H.323 End Point - Gateway Services Properties

Set the Services properties as follows:

**Gateway** Service Group Select the name of the gateway service hunting group from which this end point can receive services. If the end point dials the defined gateway access number (default is "9"), it may use any of the included services within that particular Service group.

The available options are all gateway service hunting groups that are listed in the Main View.

Some calls through the gateway may specify a required bandwidth. The following options define how the 5700 VFA allocates bandwidth in this situation:

Exact same bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required.
Equal or higher bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or more.

Equal or lower bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or less.
Equal or higher bandwidth - if not found, lower bandwidth	Provide a choice among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or more. If none exist, then offer services allocating lower than required bandwidth.
Equal or lower bandwidth - if not found, higher bandwidth	Provide a choice among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or less. If none exist, then offer services allocating higher than required bandwidth.
Limit bandwidth to Kbps more (or less) than requested	Select the appropriate option to enable only a specific amount of deviation (higher or lower) from the requested bandwidth. From the appropriate list, choose the amount of deviation (in Kbps) allowed.
	For example, if you want to allow no more than an additional 128 Kbps, then choose <b>128</b> from the appropriate list.

## **ISDN Call Routing Properties**

In the ISDN Call Routing tab, you can make the endpoint use the defined least cost routing rules when making a call.

**NOTE** You cannot make an ISDN call in Voice First mode.



H.323 End Point - ISDN Call Routing Properties

## **Product Information Properties**

The **Product Info** tab shows identification information about the end point's videoconferencing system's manufacturer and model.



H.323 End Point - Product Information Properties

The tab provides the following information:

Vendor ID	Identity of the end point manufacturer
Product ID	Identity of the conferencing tool used by the end point.
Version ID	Version number of the videoconferencing tool, for identification purposes.

#### Chapter 6 Defining End Point Nodes

## **LDAP Properties**

The LDAP tab provides information about the end point's registration, if applicable, in an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server based on the X.500 standard for directory services.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the LDAP settings of the 3300 ICP).

happy 1 Propertie	s (5750) ×
Category	ISON Cal Rouling Product Info LDAP Additional IDs
T	Display online directory from this server: N/A.
5700	List node in the following LDAP servers:
Lorvension	Server Name         Node Entry         Salect All           V ILS         cn=(I181000),a=Micr         Desr All           V NDS         N/A         Desr All           V V28         N/A         LS2           ILS3         N/A         N/A
Uner Dada	Cachange2 N.A     W25-2 N.A     W25-2 N.A     P     Open the LDAP Server View to see al LDAP server details.
Network	OK Cancel Apply Help

H.323 End Point - LDAP Properties

Set the end point's LDAP configuration as follows:

Display online directory from this server	The central LDAP server that contains the subdirectory in which the end point should be listed. You must create this subdirectory as a level within an 5700 VFA hierarchy
List Node in Following LDAP Servers	Choose the servers on which you want to list this node.
LDAP Servers View	Click this link to see location and access information about the available LDAP servers.

For more information about registering in LDAP servers, see Chapter 10, "Registering with LDAP Directories".

## **Additional IDs Properties**

In addition to its directory (E.164) number, a node may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 Alias. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable.

For example, this feature supports the Multiple Subscriber Network (MSN) service, which assigns multiple phone numbers to one ISDN line. MSN is supported by some ISDN switches.



H.323 End Point - Additional IDs Properties

### To add additional IDs for a node

- 1. Click Add to display a table row.
- 2. In the Alias column, type the node's additional E.164 number, H.323 alias, URL, or e-mail address.
- 3. In the **Type** column, click and select the address type.

#### **NOTE** To delete an entry, click in its row and then click **Delete**.

# 7 REGISTERING GATEWAYS

The 5700 VFA supports the use of H.323 gateways for connecting calls from registered end points to remote parties over ISDN networks. A gateway works as mediator between the two systems, translating between IP and ISDN protocols.

Each type of gateway has its own access number and dialing syntax. The dialing syntax usually includes the gateway's access number and the ISDN number of the remote party. For greater dialing flexibility, the syntax may also include delimiters.

Gateway services are also added to the 5700 VFA while gateways are granted login permission to the 5700 VFA. A gateway service defines the amount of available bandwidth and the type of information transmitted (such as voice only, video/voice, video/voice/data). One Gateway Service access number is created for each service type. At any time, you can add or edit available service entries from the Main View.

You can also organize sets of services within *Gateway Service Hunting Groups*. By associating end points with Gateway Service Hunting Groups, you can allocate available bandwidth to your organization's end points according to a certain resources allocation policy or geographic considerations. When an end point dials the Gateway access number, the 5700 VFA searches in the end point's Gateway services hunting group for an available service.

# 7.1 Logging in a New Gateway

Registration of gateways is always in Closed mode - a gateway cannot register automatically to the 5700 VFA. To accept the initial login attempt, the administrator must manually grant permission and then define its 5700 VFA properties.

### ► To register a gateway to the 5700 VFA

1. In the Gateway's configuration application, enter the IP address of the 5700 VFA and complete the appropriate commands to register.

In the 5700 VFA Administrator application, a Login Request notification appears on the Administrator tree.

2. Expand the Login Request item.

#### Chapter 7 Registering Gateways

Video Conferencing News	Number/Address	Connection State
U Techpub - na logged in	10.0.3.252	No Calls
Bwt1510684810	10.0.10.90	

Login Request Notification for Gateway

3. Right-click the Gateway name and then click Grant Login Permission.

A message appears, asking if you want to register the gateway now.

METEL 5	me Advinistrator
?	Would you like to add Gateway GW1570004810 (Address: 10.0.10.30, Akar: GW1510034010) to the 5700 system covil: If you press GK and complete like following Add Wipad, it will be added to like system with the properties you set now If you press Cancel or don't complete the Add Wipad, it will not be added to the system.
	CK Cancel

Gateway Registration Request

 Click OK if you want to manually set the gateway's properties. The New Gateway Wizard appears. The original property values are the default values defined in the H.323 gateway template (see "Setting Up Templates" on page 4-25).

If you click **Cancel**, the gateway does not log in, but remains under the Login Requests object until you delete it (and the gateway stops trying to log in). See "Deleting a Login Request" on page 4-6.

- Change properties according to your system specifications, or keep the default settings. When you finish each page of the wizard, click Next. For explanations about the various properties, see "Setting Gateway Properties" on page 7-4.
- 6. When you finish the last page, click **Finish**.

The Add New Services dialog box displays a list of all gateway services configured in the new gateway.

70	6ast
372	General
57] 73	Help

Adding Gateway Services

7. Select the services that will be available in the 5700 VFA zone, and then click **Add**.

The New Gateway Services wizard appears.

 Define the gateway service properties according to your system and gateway specifications, or keep the default settings. When you finish each page of the wizard, click Next. For explanations about the various properties, see "Setting Gateway Service Properties" on page 7-8.

The wizard is repeated for each service that you selected in the previous step.

9. When you finish the last page, click **Finish**.

Chapter 7 Registering Gateways

# 7.2 Setting Gateway Properties

In step 5 of "Logging in a New Gateway" on page 7-2, the New Gateway Wizard provided the chance to change various gateway properties. This section describes these properties.

## **General Properties**

The General page contains identity information of the new gateway.

Desception GW15106	04810		
H 323 Addeni Aliai : (7w1110604811	Tate (H 753 D	-	
Nghwak Addess   10 0 10	190		

New Gateway - General Properties

Define the following information:

Description	Identity of the gateway. This name will appear in the Main View after the login process is finished.
H.323 Address	
Alias	The gateway's alias name.
Туре	The type of address used by the gateway for registering with the 5700 VFA.
Network	IP address of the gateway.
Address	Changing the gateway's IP address must be done through its configuration utility. The address cannot be changed from the 5700 VFA.

## **Product Information Properties**

The **Product Info** page provides information about the gateway's manufacturer and model. In addition, you can enable or disable the exchange functionalities supported for videoconference calls through the gateway.

×

New Gateway - Product Information Properties

Vendor ID	Identity of the manufacturer.
Product ID	Manufacturer's identity of the gateway product.
Version ID	Manufacturer's version identification of the gateway product.
Location	Physical location of the gateway.
5700 VFA Transfer Model	If selected, videoconferences through this gateway may be transferred to another end point.
H.450.3 (Call Diversion services)	If selected, calls through this gateway may be forwarded according to the capabilities of H.450.3. It provides additional information about forwarded calls than Forward Facility does, such as the original destination of the call.

**NOTE** If the selected gateway supports both H.450.3 and Forward Facility, we recommend enabling H.450.3.

Forward Facility messages	If selected, calls through this gateway may be forwarded according to Forward Facility capabilities. A forwarded call does not provide information about the redirection.
Empty Capability Set	If selected, calls may pass through this gateway before the initiating end point receives a capability set. This option helps increase the speed of Call Transfer and Ad- hoc Videoconferences.
Information Request Messages (IRQ)	If selected, the 5700 VFA can send IRQ messages checking if the gateway is online.
Add New Services to this Group	If a new gateway service is added to this gateway's configuration, it will automatically be included in the hunting group selected here. To avoid adding services to hunting groups automatically, select <b>No Group</b> .

## **ISDN Dialing Properties**

Dialing conventions vary among gateways, according to the vendor. Refer to your gateway's documentation for the specific delimiters or other characters that are required in order to access the gateway's services.



New Gateway - ISDN Dialing Properties

In the **Dialing** page, define the following information:

ISDN Dialing

Delimiter between Service Number and First Number	Type the character, if applicable, that the 5700 VFA adds before the first ISDN number.
Delimiter between Phone Numbers	Type the character, if applicable, that the 5700 VFA adds between each ISDN number to be dialed.
Dialing sequence is terminated with	Type the character, if applicable, that the 5700 VFA must enter at the end of the dialing string.

**NOTE** All of these values must be identical to the dialing configuration of the Gateway.

Send the Service Alias when dialing to this gateway	Video gateways support multiple services. If the gateway dialing syntax requires the inclusion of a service number, select this option.
Treat H.323 messages sent from this gateway as if they were sent from its service	Select this option if the new gateway does not define services. The 5700 VFA will handle messages sent through the gateway as H.323 64K Voice messages.

#### Chapter 7 Registering Gateways

## 7.3 Setting Gateway Service Properties

Gateway services are added to the 5700 VFA during the gateway registration process. A gateway service defines the amount of available bandwidth. One Gateway Service access number is created for each service type. At any time, you can add or edit available service entries from the Main View.

#### **General Properties**

The General page contains identity information of the new gateway service.

December	70			
-H 323 Addens Alias : 70 See roote adde	Land at the	<b>s</b> ⊯ [E 164	-	
Ngtwork Address	10.0.10.30			

New Gateway Service - General Properties

Define the following information:

Number	Directory number of this service. This number will appear in the Main View after the login process finishes.
Description	Identity of the service.
H.323 Address	
Alias	The service's alias.
Туре	The type of alias or address.
Network Address	IP address of the gateway.

## **Bandwidth Control Properties**

In the **Bandwidth Control** page, enter the exact bandwidth defined in the gateway's configuration.

E - B	512	± the	

New Gateway Service - Bandwidth Control Properties

# 7.4 Gateway Service Hunting Groups

A Gateway Service hunting group contains multiple gateway services that are available to particular end points when they start LAN to ISDN videoconferences. One Gateway Service Hunting Group can contain different bandwidths and different Gateway devices.

Every registered end point may be associated with a gateway services hunting group (see "Gateway Services Properties" on page 6-10). When an end point dials the gateway access number, the 5700 VFA searches for the services available to its associated group.

For example, if an end point specifies 384 Kbps bandwidth, the 5700 VFA checks in the associated hunting group if a gateway service providing 384 Kbps is permitted for the end point. If not, the 5700 VFA searches for the closest available service (in accordance to the end point's Service properties).

This ability can help you allocate available ISDN resources to various end points according to a certain resources allocation policy or geographic considerations.

#### To set up a hunting group of gateway services

\*

#### 1. Click the New Gateway Service Hunting Group button.

The New Gateway Service Hunting Group wizard opens to the General Properties dialog box.

Directory Number	1013			
Cerriptor	Mailuting			

Gateway Services Hunting Group - General Properties

2. In the **General** page, type the following identity information of the new gateway service:

Directory Number	Assign a directory number for the whole hunting group.
Description	Type an identity for the group. This description does not affect the operation of the system.

Click Next. The Hunting Group Properties dialog box appears.

0 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 75	Number 72 71 71 71 71 71 73	Eardeedh 394 5 Apr 120 Eapr 54 Kbpt 512 Eapr 512 Eapr 512 Eapr	Select All	

Gateway Services Hunting Group - Hunting Group Properties

- 3. Select any number of services from the list to be in the hunting group. The selected services will be the only ones available to associated end points.
  - To place all services in the hunting group, click Select All.
  - To clear all the selections, click Clear All.

Click Next. The Additional IDs Properties dialog box appears.

4. In addition to its directory (E.164) number, a hunting group may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 Alias. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable.

For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

5. Click **Finish** to implement the settings and close the dialog box.

# 8 REGISTERING AN MCU

The Mitel Networks 5700 VFA supports the use of MCUs (Multipoint Control Unit) for connecting registered end points with a number of other end points in a multipoint videoconference.

#### NOTE For Accord MGC users

The operation of Accord MGC in conjunction with the 5700 VFA requires a special configuration. For more information, see Appendix D, "Using Accord<sup>™</sup> MGC with the 5700 VFA".

## 8.1 Logging in a New MCU

If the 5700 VFA is in Open Mode for MCUs, any MCU that attempts to register is automatically logged in.

If the system is in Closed Mode, an MCU must be granted login permission by an administrator with Super User privileges. During this process, the administrator must define or confirm the MCU's 5700 VFA properties.

#### To register an MCU to the 5700 VFA

1. In the MCU's configuration application, enter the IP address of the 5700 VFA and complete the appropriate commands to register.

If the 5700 VFA is in Closed Mode for MCUs, a Login Request notification appears on the Administrator tree.

2. Expand the Login Request item.

Number/Address	Carriection State
10.0.3.252	No Calls
1001031	
	Nantes/Addeus 10.0.3.252

Login Request Notification for MCU

3. Right-click the MCU name and then click Grant Login Permission.

A message appears, asking if you want to register the MCU now.



MCU Registration Request

4. Click **OK** if you want to manually set the MCU's properties, such as exchange function capabilities (Product Info). The New MCU Wizard appears. The original property values are the default values defined in the H.323 MCU template (see "Setting Up Templates" on page 4-25).

If you click **Cancel**, the MCU does not log in, but remains under the Login Requests object until you delete it (and the MCU stops trying to log in). See "Deleting a Login Request" on page 4-6.

- 5. Change properties according to your system specifications, or keep the default settings. When you finish each page of the wizard, click **Next**. For explanations about the various properties, see "Setting MCU Properties" on page 8-3.
- 6. When you finish the last page, click **Finish**.

# 8.2 Setting MCU Properties

In step 5 of "Logging in a New MCU" on page 8-2, the Add Wizard provided the chance to change various MCU properties. This section describes these properties.

## **General Properties**

The General page contains identity information of the new MCU.

H.323 Address			
ANN: PVMCU-010081	Type: H.323 ID	*	
See more addresses at the	cosontifii coa		
Network Address 10 0.10	31		

New MCU - General Properties

In the General Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Description	Identity of the MCU. This name will appear in the Main View after the login process is finished.
H.323 Address	
Alias	The MCU's alias name.
Туре	The type of address used by the MCU for registering with the 5700 VFA.
Network	IP address of the MCU.
Address	Changing the MCU's IP address must be done through its configuration utility. The address cannot be changed from the 5700 VFA.

Chapter 8 Registering an MCU

## **Bandwidth Control Properties**

In the **Bandwidth Control** tab, select **Allow calls with Non-registered Devices** to allow non-registered devices to participate in any multipoint videoconferences managed by this MCU.

ese MEU - Bandweith Central Properties	×
P Allow calls with Nov-Regimeed Devices	
c Back News Carcel	Help
Eack News Cancel	Help

New MCU - Bandwidth Control Properties

## **Product Information Properties**

The **Product Info** page provides information about the MCU's manufacturer and model. In addition, you can enable or disable the exchange functionalities supported for multipoint videoconferences through the MCU.

Verdor ID:	11,11,11	
PoduriD:	RADVision MCU-323	
Venior ID:	[Ver. 2.2	
Location	Himespole Headquarters	
F H 450 F Forw F Ench P Inform Add New	0.3 (Call Diversion services) ed Facility reessages v Capability Set vation Respect (IRQ) reessages Services to the Graup	
Ow MCI	I Service Permission Group	
	Allack Nexts Dates	140

New MCU - H.323 Properties

Vendor ID	Identity of the manufacturer.	
Product ID	Manufacturer's identity of the MCU product.	
Version ID	Manufacturer's version identification of the MCU product.	
Location	Physical location of the MCU.	
5700 VFA Transfer Model	If selected, videoconferences through this MCU may be transferred to another end point.	
H.450.3 (Call Diversion services)	If selected, calls through this MCU may be forwarded according to the capabilities of H.450.3. It provides additional information about forwarded calls than Forward Facility does, such as the original destination of the call.	

Forward Facility messages	If selected, calls through this MCU may be forwarded according to Forward Facility capabilities. A forwarded call does not provide information about the redirection.	
<b>NOTE</b> If the select we recomm	ted MCU supports both H.450.3 and Forward Facility, nend enabling H.450.3.	
Empty Capability Set	If selected, calls may pass through this MCU before the participating end points receive capability sets. This option helps increase the speed of Call Transfer and Ad- hoc Videoconferences.	
Information Request Messages (IRQ)	If selected, the 5700 VFA can send IRQ messages checking if the MCU is online.	
Add New Services to this Group	If a new MCU service is added to this MCU's configuration, it will automatically be included in the permission group selected here. To avoid adding services to permission groups automatically, select <b>No Group</b> .	

## **Additional ID Properties**

In addition to its directory (E.164) number, an MCU may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 Alias. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable.

For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

# 8.3 MCU Services

MCU Services define the MCU resources used during a multipoint videoconference.

A registered MCU's services are automatically listed in the 5700 VFA Administrator after the particular MCU is granted login permission to the 5700 VFA. One directory number is created for each service type. At any time, you can edit service entries from the Main View.

#### NOTE For Accord MGC users

In the Accord MGC, MCU services are provided through Meeting Rooms. For information about defining Meeting Room properties, see Appendix D, "Setting Meeting Room Properties" on page D-6.

#### ► To view or edit MCU Services

- 1. Double-click an MCU Service node. The specific service's Properties dialog box appears.
- 2. Define the MCU Service properties according to your system and MCU specifications, or keep the default settings.
- 3. To implement the changes and proceed to another tab in the dialog box, click the appropriate tab.
- 4. To implement all the changes and close the dialog box, click **OK**.

The following subsections describe the MCU Service properties.

Chapter 8 Registering an MCU

## **General Properties**

The General tab contains identity information of the new MCU Service.

Ceepoy nue	de po		
Description:	100.		
Alkan : 70		Type CTIN	: 4
See sure a	Advences of the Addre	nel Di otor	
Network Adds	er: 10 0 0.42		

MCU Service - General Properties

In the General Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Directory Number	Number to be dialed for using this service.
Description	Name of the service. This name will appear in the Main View after the login process is finished.
H.323 Address	
Alias	The MCU's alias as it is defined by its operating system.
Туре	The type of address used by the MCU for registering with the 5700 VFA.
Additional IDs page	Click this link to view any additional IDs that have been configured for this MCU.
Network	IP address of the MCU.
Address	Changing the MCU's IP address must be done through the its configuration utility. The address cannot be changed from the 5700 VFA.

## **Bandwidth Control Properties**

In the **Bandwidth Control** tab, select **Allow calls with Non-registered Devices** to allow non-registered devices to participate in any multipoint videoconferences using this MCU service.

70 Proper	rlies (MCU Service)	x
General	Bandwidth Control Adhoc Contenence   Services   4	•
P Ala	ov calls with Non-Flegsteed Devices	
1	or result and the	
	CIC LARCEL FUEL FIELD	

MCU Service - Bandwidth Control Properties

## **Ad-Hoc Conference Properties**

A point-to-point conference becomes an ad-hoc conference when additional end points are "invited" by one of the parties and they join the session. In the **Ad-hoc Conference** tab, you can make the selected MCU Service available for use in adhoc conferences. This availability may be in addition to basic multipoint videoconferencing or exclusive for ad-hoc conferences.

**NOTE** Expansion to ad-hoc videoconference is available only for licensed users of the Conference Control Option. If you want to add this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.



MCU Service - Ad-hoc Conference Properties

Use this service as an ad-hoc conference resource	Select to make this service available for use when expanding to an ad-hoc videoconference.
Use this service exclusively for ad-hoc conferences	Select to make this service available only for use in ad- hoc videoconferences, and unavailable for point-to- point sessions.
Ad-hoc Resources page	Click this link to open the 5700 VFA Ad-hoc Resources Properties, in which you can also select which MCU Services may be used for ad-hoc videoconferences (see "Ad-hoc Resources" on page 5-13).

## **Services Properties**

In the **Services** tab, you can define bandwidth allocation policy for any MCU conferences or calls through a gateway in which this service is used.

MED Service Persisten Brou	Del MOU Service Permittion
Enhanced Ealerway Dialog	In an an an an an an
Laneway service Linds	Der ow service Hurang Gi
When a specific 8 andwidth i	is requested, find services with
C Exact same Bandwidth	
C Equal or higher Bandwi	dih,
C Equal or lower Bandwid	£5
C Equal or higher Bandre	dit. If not found, lower Bandweth
F. Equal or lower Blandwid	8h II not found, higher Bandwidth.
E Last Bandvidth to	- Kbps note than requested
T Livel Bandwedth to	Fops less than requested.

MCU Service - Services Properties

MCU Service Permission Group	Select the name of the MCU Service Permission group from which an MCU using this service can receive additional MCU services (see "MCU Service Permission Groups" on page 8-13).	
	For example, if more than one MCU is registered with the 5700 VFA, videoconferences among them can be created by bridging the MCUs. To initiate the connection, the MCU dials one of the services listed in its assigned permission group.	
Gateway Service Group	Select the name of the gateway service hunting group from which an MCU using this service can receive gateway services. If the MCU dials the defined gateway access number (default is "9"), it may use any of the included services within that particular Service group.	
	The available options are all gateway service hunting groups that are listed in the Main View (see "Gateway Service Hunting Groups" on page 7-9).	

#### Chapter 8 Registering an MCU

Some calls through the gateway may specify a required bandwidth. The following options define how the 5700 VFA allocates bandwidth in this situation:

Exact same bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required.
Equal or higher bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or more.
Equal or lower bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or less.
Equal or higher bandwidth - if not found, lower bandwidth	Provide a choice among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or more. If none exist, then offer services allocating lower than required bandwidth.
Equal or lower bandwidth - if not found, higher bandwidth	Provide a choice among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or less. If none exist, then offer services allocating higher than required bandwidth.
Limit bandwidth to Kbps more (or less) than requested	Select the appropriate option to enable only a specific amount of deviation (higher or lower) from the requested bandwidth. From the appropriate list, choose the amount of deviation (in Kbps) allowed.
	For example, if you want to allow no more than an additional 128 Kbps, then choose <b>128</b> from the appropriate list.

## **LDAP** Properties

The **LDAP** tab provides information about the MCU service's registration, if applicable, in an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server. For information about nodes' LDAP Properties, see "LDAP Properties" on page 6-14.

#### Additional ID Properties

In addition to its directory (E.164) number, an MCU service may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 Alias. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable. For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

# 8.4 MCU Service Permission Groups

An MCU Service Permission group is a set of MCU services that may be used by specific nodes. Its purpose is to control the use of MCU resources among an organization's end points.

An MCU Service Permission group may consist of one service, multiple services, or all available services. It may also include combinations of services from more than one registered MCU. In addition, you can define the automatic addition of new MCU services to a specific permission group (see "Product Information Properties" on page 8-5).

By default, every registered end point is assigned to the default permission group. This may be changed when manually adding a new end point, or by editing the end point's properties (see "Gateway Services Properties" on page 6-10). An end point is only permitted to use those services listed in its assigned permission group. If it attempts to dial a service not listed in its group, the 5700 VFA rejects the call.



MCU Service Permission Groups in the Administrator Window

#### To create an MCU Service Permission Group

- ø
- 1. Click the New MCU Permission Group button. The New MCU Permission Group dialog box appears.
- 2. Change properties according to your permission group requirements. To move to the next properties page, click **Next**. For explanations about the various properties, see pages 8-14 to 8-15.
- 3. Click **Finish**. In the Main View, the new group appears under the MCU Service Permission Group object.

Chapter 8 Registering an MCU

## **General Properties**

In the **Description** box, type a name for the group. This name will appear on the system tree and in Services property dialog boxes.

Georgice	Follware Group	
	Seet) Concat	Contrada I

New MCU Permission Group - General Properties

#### **Permission Group Properties**

The **Permission Group** Properties page includes all registered services from all registered MCUs. Select any number of services from the list to be in the permission group. The group may also include combinations of services from more than one registered MCU.

- To place all services in the permission group, click Select All.
- To clear all the selections, click Clear All.

41414141414141414 888 1188 1188 1188 888 1188 11	14.mbe 50 67 66 55 62 62 67 60 60	In HCU 1533100 1343100 1883100 1883100 1883100 1883100 1883100 1883100 1883100	Select All	
	(Bath	Frith	Cancal   Ha	ą.

New MCU Permission Group Properties

Mitel Networks 5700 VFA Administrator's Guide
# 9 **NEIGHBORING ZONES**

# 9.1 The 5700 VFA's Relationship with Neighboring Zones

In addition to its own registered nodes, the 5700 VFA provides an organization with the ability to carry on videoconferences with nodes outside its administrative area. These nodes may be managed by other 5700 VFAs or third-party Gatekeepers, or unregistered with any management device.

The collections of nodes that 5700 VFAs and Gatekeepers register and manage are called *zones*. Multiple zones may be listed in the Administrator's system tree, where you may manage the communication between them and the local 5700 VFA.

Neighboring zones may be added automatically if calls are made between it and the local 5700 VFA zone, or added manually by you. Additional zones must be configured, according to the inter-zone management policy that you implement. After zones are added to the tree, you may manually add entries for end points, MCUs and Gateways that are registered in those zones.

After zones are set up in the Administrator Main View, you can perform the following inter-zone management tasks (see "Inter-Zone Videoconferencing Management" on page 9-14):

- Start a point-to-point videoconference between two end points
- Setting up a dialing plan, which defines how to dial users in other zones
- Restrict the bandwidth allotment for inter-zone videoconferences
- Generate CDR records for inter-zone videoconference calls
- Restrict the use of exchange features such as Call Transfer and Call Forwarding.

# 9.2 Logging in New Zones

Inter-zone functions are available between the local 5700 VFA and zones known to it. Neighboring 5700 VFAs or Gatekeepers may be listed in the 5700 VFA automatically or manually.

Registered 5700 VFAs and Gatekeepers appear on the system tree under the Zones object. You can manually add any *neighbor node* (end point, MCU, or gateway) from a specific zone under that same zone in the Administrator. You can then initiate calls involving these nodes and manage their 5700 VFA configuration (see "Setting End Point 5700 VFA Properties" on page 6-3) in the same way as nodes registered with the local 5700 VFA.



Listing of Neighboring 5700 VFAs and Gatekeepers

### Adding Zones Automatically

The 5700 VFA System Properties include an option for adding zones in Open Mode. If this option is selected, the 5700 VFA will automatically add other 5700 VFA and Gatekeepers' zones only after one of the following occurs:

The local 5700 VFA tries to dial using the Multicast search method.

An incoming call from another zone arrives.

Discovered zones are listed in the Administrator (see the illustration above).

#### **>** To add zones automatically

- 1. Right-click the 5700 VFA node, point to **Property** and then **Security**, and click **Security Mode**. The **Security Mode** tab opens.
- 2. Select the **Open Mode** and **Neighboring Gatekeepers (Zones)** options. The other 5700 VFAs and/or gatekeepers must also be in Open Mode.
- 3. Click the **H.323 Gatekeeper** icon on the left side of the dialog box. By default, the **Zone Settings** tab is open.

- We recommend the Multicast search technique for searches of zones and neighboring nodes. Select First Multicast Location Requests, then in Defined Zones (default selection) or Send Multicast Location Requests (see "Zone Settings" on page 5-20).
- 5. Click OK.



Setting Open Mode for Neighboring 5700 VFAs and Gatekeepers

# Adding Zones Manually

If the 5700 VFA is in Closed Mode for zones, neighboring 5700 VFAs and Gatekeepers may only be added to the Administrator manually. In this process, you must define or confirm each node's properties.

#### **>** To add a zone manually

- ්
- Click the New Zone button. The New Zone Wizard appears. The original property values are the default values defined in the Neighboring Gatekeeper template (see "Setting Up Templates" on page 4-25)
- Change properties according to your network specifications, or keep the default settings. When you finish each page of the wizard, click Next. For explanations about the various properties, see "Setting Zone Properties" on page 9-4.
- 3. When you finish the last page, click Finish.

#### Setting Zone Properties 9.3

The main objective of defining zone properties is the definition of policies and the allocation of bandwidth for inter-zone videoconferences. This section describes these properties.

#### **•** To define zone properties

- 1. Double-click a neighboring zone. The zone's Properties dialog box appears.
- 2 Define the zone properties according to your network's videoconferencing needs and specifications, or keep the default settings.
- 3. To implement the changes and proceed to another tab in the dialog box, click **Apply** and then the appropriate tab.
- 4. To implement all the changes and close the dialog box, click **OK**.

The following sections describe the zone properties.

#### **General Properties**

The General tab contains identity information of the new 5700 VFA or Gatekeeper.

Description: VCDN Noth Remote Addess: 10.0 10.14	1
lenvok Addess: 10 b 10 14	4

Zone - General Properties

In the General Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Zone Prefix	Directory number (E.164 number) assigned to the 5700 VFA or Gatekeeper. The zone prefix functions as an "area code," which may be used by the 5700 VFA to dial nodes in the selected zone (to enable zone prefix dialing, see the next section, "Zone Settings").
Description	Identifying name of the zone. This name will appear in the Main View.
Network Address	IP address of the zone's 5700 VFA or Gatekeeper.

### **Zone Settings**

In the Zone Settings page, define the local 5700 VFA intercommunication relationship with the neighboring zone. This relationship includes permission to make and receive calls, generation of CDR reports, and the use of prefixes when dialing.

test Properties (Zone) 🛛 🗙	
General Zone Settings Bandwidth Control   MCU Services   • •	
Zone herwiche C Neighbor C Parent directory gatekeeper C Drid gintekeeper - for future one	
Making Calls to this Zone Allow reaking Calls to this Zone Generate CDR records for calls made to this Zone Always use Zone prefix when searching for end points	
Receiving Calls from this Zone R Allow receiving Calls from this Zone R Generate CDR records for calls received from this Zone	
Location: 01awa.Cavada	

Zone - Zone Settings Properties

In the Zone Settings Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Zone Hierarchy	Select whether this zone is a neighbor or a parent directory gatekeeper.
Allow Making Calls to this Zone	If selected, all 5700 VFA nodes may start videoconferences with neighbor nodes registered in this zone.
Generate CDR records for calls made to this Zone	If selected, all calls to neighbor nodes in this zone will be listed in a Call Details Record (CDR). For more details about CDRs, see <b>Getting Started&gt;Monitoring</b> <b>System Status&gt;Call Accounting</b> in the 5700 VFA online help.
Always use Zone prefix when searching for end points	Select this option to enable dialing to gatekeepers that require their prefix in the dialing syntax (non-Mitel Networks gatekeepers). To dial nodes managed by these gatekeepers, users must receive the appropriate prefixes from the system administrator or from the remote party.
Allow receiving calls from this zone	If selected, 5700 VFA nodes may receive videoconference calls from neighboring nodes registered in this zone.
Generate CDR records for calls received from this Zone	If selected, all calls from neighbor nodes in this zone will be listed in a Call Details Record (CDR). For more details about CDRs, see <b>Getting Started&gt;Monitoring</b> <b>System Status&gt;Call Accounting</b> in the 5700 VFA online help.
Location	Enter a general physical location of the zone's 5700 VFA or Gatekeeper and its end points

# **Bandwidth Control Properties**

In the **Bandwidth Control** page, you can define the available amount of bandwidth for all concurrent videoconferencing calls between the local zone and the neighboring zone.

Kat Properties (Zone)
General Zone Settings Bandwidth Control MCU Services
🔽 Linit number of concurrent calls to 🍵 🚊 Calls.
Bandvidth Linits
🗖 Limit maximum to 📑 Raps.
OK Cancel Apply Help

Zone - Bandwidth Control Properties

Set bandwidth control properties as follows:

Limit Number of Concurrent Calls to	Select the maximum number of calls between the two zones at the same time. The default setting is 5.
Limit Maximum to	Select this option to define the total available bandwidth that the local 5700 VFA allocates to all calls to the neighboring zone. In the list, select the bandwidth.

### **MCU Services Properties**

In the MCU Services tab, you set the properties for Multiparty Conference Units.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), the settings in this tab are overridden by those programmed in the 3300 ICP.

test Properties (Zone)
MDU Services   Gateway Services   ISDN Call Routing   Prod. 4 +
MCU Service Penaission Group:
Def MDU Service Permisson Broup
Ad Hac Service Permission Broup:
Def AdHoc Permission Broup
Dedicated MCU Service.
Na Service
OK Cancel Apply Help

H.323 End Point - MCU Services Properties

Set the MCU Services properties as follows:

MCU Service Permission Group	Select the name of the MCU Service Permission group from which this end point can receive services. The available options are all MCU Service Permission groups that are listed in the Main View.
Ad-Hoc Service Permission Group	Select the name of the Ad-hoc Service Permission group from which this end point can receive services. The available options are all Ad-hoc Service Permission groups that are listed in the Main View.
Dedicated MCU Service	Select the name of the dedicated MCU Service Permission group from which this end point can receive services. The available options are all dedicated MCU Service Permission groups that are listed in the Main View.

#### **Gateway Service Properties**

In the **Services** tab, define how the local 5700 VFA allocates MCU and Gateway resources for incoming videoconferencing calls from the neighboring zone.

test Properties	(2one) 2	¢
MDU Services	Gateway Services   ISDN Call Routing   Prod. 4   +	ļ
Enhanced 6	ateway Dialing	l
Gatervay Ser	vice Group: Det Blw' Service Hunting Group	l
When a spec	offic Bandwidth is requested. Find services with:	l
C Exect a	erre Bandwidth.	l
C Equal o	x higher 8 andwidth.	L
C Equal o	x lower Bandwidth.	L
C Equal o	r higher 8 andwidth. If not found, lower Bandwidth.	L
@ Equal o	e lover Bandwidth. If not found, higher Bandwidth.	L
E Link Ba	endvidth to 👘 Rāps more than requested. endvidth to 👘 Rāps less than requested.	
		I
		1
0K	Cancel Apply Help	

Zone - Service Properties

Gateway	Select the Gateway Service hunting group that defines
Service Group	the services that will be available for incoming
	videoconferences from the neighboring zone. If a
	neighbor node dials the defined gateway access number
	(default is "9"), it may use any of the included services
	within that particular Service group.

The available options are all Gateway Service hunting groups that are listed in the current Administrator Main View (see "Gateway Service Hunting Groups" on page 7-9).

Some calls from the neighboring zone through a gateway may specify a required bandwidth. The following options define how the 5700 VFA allocates bandwidth in this situation:

Exact same bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required.
Equal or higher bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or more.

Equal or lower bandwidth	Provide a choice only among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or less.
Equal or higher bandwidth - if not found, lower bandwidth	Provide a choice among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or more. If none exist, then offer services allocating lower than required bandwidth.
Equal or lower bandwidth - if not found, higher bandwidth	Provide a choice among services that provide the exact bandwidth required or less. If none exist, then offer services allocating higher than required bandwidth.
Limit bandwidth to Kbps more (or less) than requested	Select the appropriate option to enable only a specific amount of deviation (higher or lower) from the requested bandwidth. From the appropriate list, choose the amount of deviation (in Kbps) allowed.
	For example, if you want to allow no more than an additional 128 Kbps, then choose <b>128</b> from the appropriate list.

# **ISDN Call Routing Properties**

In the ISDN Call Routing tab, you can make the endpoint use the defined least cost routing rules when making a call.





H.323 End Point - ISDN Call Routing Properties

### **Product Info Properties**

In the **Product Info** tab, select the exchange functionalities that are supported by the neighboring zone's 5700 VFA or gatekeeper.

test Properties (Zone)		×
Gateway Services   ISDN Call Routing This product supports	Product Info	Addio • •
S700 Transfer Model     H 450.3 (Cal Diversion services)     Forward Facility mecages     Empty Capability Set		
OK Cancel	Apply	Help

Zone - Product Info Properties

5700 VFA Transfer Model	If selected, videoconferences between neighbor nodes and 5700 VFA nodes may be transferred to another end point
H.450.3 (Call Diversion services	If selected, calls between the neighboring zone and the local 5700 VFA zone may be forwarded according to the capabilities of H.450.3. It provides additional information about forwarded calls than Forward Facility does, such as the original destination of the call.
Forward Facility messages	If selected, calls between the neighboring zone and the local 5700 VFA zone may be forwarded according to Forward Facility capabilities. A forwarded call does not provide information about the redirection.

**NOTE** If the neighboring zone supports both H.450.3 and Forward Facility, we recommend enabling H.450.3.

Empty	If selected, the local 5700 VFA will send calls to the
Capability Set	neighboring zone without waiting to receive a capability
	set from the remote party. This selection also enables
	the joining of neighbor nodes in ad-hoc
	videoconferences.

#### **Additional IDs Properties**

In addition to its zone prefix, a neighboring zone may have additional prefixes to which its nodes may be dialed, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 IDs (node name).

For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

# 9.4 Known Non-Registered End Points

There may be situations where end points will not register with any gatekeeper, but should still be available for videoconferencing with registered end points. In such a case, you can make the end point known to the 5700 VFA by listing it as a *non-registered end point*.

# Adding a Known Non-Registered End Point

A non-registered end point may be "discovered" if it is in a videoconference with an 5700 VFA node. In such a case, the non-registered end point appears on the system tree under the Non-registered Devices object during the duration of this call. The administrator may then permanently add the end point to the tree (depending on the system Non-registered Device Properties - see page 5-19).



Non-registered End Point Appearing in Main View

> To add a non-registered node to the system tree

- 1. Right-click the node and then click **Make Permanent**. The New Permanent Non-registered Device Wizard appears.
- Set the properties according to your system specifications. When you complete a page, click Next to advance to the next properties page. For explanations about the various properties, see "Setting End Point 5700 VFA Properties" on page 6-3.
- 3. Click Finish to exit the wizard.

# 9.5 Inter-Zone Videoconferencing Management

You can perform the following inter-zone management tasks:

- Setting up a dialing plan, which defines how the 5700 VFA starts point-topoint videoconferences between 5700 VFA nodes and neighbor nodes, or with a non-registered node.
- Restrict the bandwidth allotment for inter-zone videoconferences
- Restrict the use of exchange features such as Call Transfer and Call Forward.
- □ Sharing gateway resources with other zones.

# Setting Up Inter-Zone Dialing

If your organization contains more than one 5700 VFA or other gatekeepers, you likely want to provide the ability of end points to videoconference with nodes in the other zones, as well as to zones outside the organization. This section explains how to set up the relevant configurations to permit inter-zone videoconferencing.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the Dialing settings of the 3300 ICP).

To permit dialing between nodes in different zones, the 5700 VFAs and the relevant zones must have a specific configuration. Perform the following tasks:

1. Within your own organization, we recommend that you assign different directory numbering ranges in all 5700 VFAs. If identical directory numbers exist in different zones, zone prefixes must be added to numbers when dialing, and must be added to the node configurations (for more details, see "Dial Plan" on page 5-5).



Setting a Directory Number Range for the 5700 VFA

2. If your organization is using an online directory (such as ILS or NDS), enable the zone prefix to be appended to each entry's configuration. If a node is moved to a different zone, the 5700 VFA also updates the prefix in the online directory (for more details, see "LDAP Settings" on page 5-9).

Enable the zone prefix to be appended to each entry's configuration in online directories.



LDAP Settings Properties

3. All of the respective zones must be known to each other. If the 5700 VFA is set to Open Mode registration, any neighboring zones managed by 5700 VFAs and H.323 gatekeepers may be listed automatically in the Main View. If the 5700 VFA is set to Closed Mode registration, you have to add the neighboring 5700 VFAs and gatekeepers to the Main View manually (to set the 5700 VFA to Open or Closed Mode, see "Security Mode" on page 5-15).



Open Mode for Adding Neighboring 5700 VFAs and Gatekeepers

- **NOTE** Make sure that the zone prefixes (directory numbers) are listed identically in all known 5700 VFAs and gatekeepers.
- 4. Inter-zone search for addresses must be enabled in the 5700 VFAs. You can set the 5700 VFAs to use either Multicast or Defined Zones searching or a combination of the two. See the figure on the next page (for more details, see the 5700 VFA "Zone Settings" on page 5-20).

#### Chapter 9 **Neighboring Zones** ocal 5700 - 127.0.0.1 Properties (5700) Select the method of searching for addresses Category Zone Settings Advanced Settings in other zones Search Policy if a dialed address is not found C Don't search in other Zones. G Search other zones: First by: Multicast location requests • Then ty: Defined neighbor zones ٠ Then by: Don't by anymore .

Selecting Address Search Method

5. The ability to receive and send calls must be enabled in the Zone Settings of each relevant zone's properties (for more details, see the zone's "Zone Settings" on page 9-5).



Allow Videoconferences Between this Zone and the Local Zone

6. To enable dialing to gatekeepers that require their prefix in the dialing syntax (non-Mitel Networks gatekeepers), select the Always use Zone prefix when searching for end points option in the Zone Settings of the zone. To dial nodes managed by these gatekeepers, users must receive the appropriate prefixes from the system administrator or from the remote party (for more details, see the zone's "Zone Settings" on page 9-5).

#### Neighboring Zones Chapter 9

Select to allow local 5700 VFA nodes to call nodes managed by a non-VCON or Mitel Networks gatekeeper



Allow Videoconferences Between a Zone Managed by a non-VCON or Mitel Networks Gatekeeper and the Local Zone

# **Restricting Bandwidth Allotment**

For each neighboring zone, you can restrict the amount of bandwidth that is available for all concurrent videoconferences between that zone and the local 5700 VFA. For individual nodes, you can also define a maximum bandwidth allotment.

#### To set bandwidth allotment for inter-zone calls

1. Double-click the neighboring zone and click the Bandwidth Control tab.

-or-

Right-click the neighboring zone, point to **Property** and then click **Bandwidth Control**.

- 2. In the Bandwidth Control page, select **Limit Maximum to** to define the total bandwidth that the local 5700 VFA allocates for all calls to the neighboring zone. In the list, select the bandwidth in Kbps.
- 3. Select Limit Number of Concurrent Calls to restrict the number of simultaneous calls allowed between the local 5700 VFA and the neighboring zone. From the list, choose the number of calls.
- 4. To implement the changes and close the dialog box, click OK.

For example, if you allocated 384 Kbps for all calls and there are four concurrent calls, a possible distribution of the available bandwidth for all calls would be 128, 128, 64 and 64 Kbps.



Setting Bandwidth Allotment for Inter-zone Calls

To set bandwidth allotment for calls between the local 5700 VFA and a neighbor node

1. Double-click the neighbor node and click the **Bandwidth Control** tab.

-or-

Right-click the neighbor node, point to **Property** and then click **Bandwidth Control**.

- 2. In the Bandwidth Control page, select **Limit Maximum to** to define the total bandwidth that the local 5700 VFA allocates for all concurrent calls to the neighbor node. In the list, select the bandwidth in kbps.
- 3. Select Limit Number of Concurrent Calls to restrict the number of simultaneous calls allowed between the local 5700 VFA and the neighbor node. From the list, choose the number of calls.
- 4. To implement the changes and close the dialog box, click **OK**.



Setting Bandwidth Allotment for Inter-zone Calls to a Neighbor Node

### **Restricting H.450 Exchange Functions**

You can allow or forbid H.450 Exchange functions, such as Call Forwarding and Call Transfer, between the local 5700 VFA and the neighboring zone or node.

**•** To allow H.450 Exchange functions to the neighboring zone

 Double-click the neighboring zone and then click the Product Info tab. -or-

Right-click the neighboring zone, point to **Property** and then click **Product Info**.

- 2. In the Product Info page, select **5700 VFA Transfer Model** to allow Call Transfer to all nodes in the neighboring zone.
- 3. Select **H.450.3 (Call Diversion services)** to allow Call Forwarding to all nodes in the neighboring zone.
- 4. To implement the changes and close the dialog box, click OK.



Enabling H.450 Exchange Functions to a Neighboring Zone

#### To allow H.450 Exchange functions to a neighbor node

1. Double-click the neighbor node and then click the **Product Info** tab.

-or-

Right-click the neighbor node, point to **Property** and then click **Product Info**.

- 2. In the Product Info page, select **5700 VFA Transfer Model** to allow Call Transfer to the neighbor node only.
- 3. Select **H.450.3 (Call Diversion services)** to allow Call Forwarding to to the neighbor node only.
- 4. To implement the changes and close the dialog box, click OK.



Enabling H.450 Exchange Functions to a Neighbor Node

# **Sharing Gateway Services with Other Zones**

Gateway services from the local 5700 VFA may be provided to neighbor nodes. Also, you may provide gateway services from neighboring zones to 5700 VFA nodes.

# **Direct Gateway Service Dialing**

This method may be used for providing neighbor nodes with gateway services that are registered in the local 5700 VFA. It is easy to set up but requires users to obtain the local 5700 VFA zone prefix and enter it while dialing.

#### > To set up direct gateway service dialing

1. Right-click the neighboring zone, point to **Properties**, and then click **Services**. The **Services** tab appears.



- Select a Gateway Service Hunting Group and bandwidth allocation policy (see page 9-9). To limit the gateway services available to neighbor nodes, you can even create a specific Gateway Service Hunting Group (see "Gateway Service Hunting Groups" on page 7-9).
- 3. Click OK.

To obtain the service, the neighbor node must dial:

# [Zone Prefix][Gateway Access Number][ISDN number of remote party] For example, 40093334444, where

400 is the prefix, 9 is the access number, and 3334444 is the ISDN number.

#### Adding a Neighbor Gateway to the Local 5700 VFA

This method may be used for providing 5700 VFA nodes with gateway services that are registered in a neighboring zone. Listing a gateway and its services under its neighboring zone in the Main View offers the following advantages:

Users do not need to obtain and add zone prefixes when they dial.

- □ The listed gateway services may be placed in Gateway Service Hunting Groups in the local 5700 VFA.
- To add a neighbor gateway to the local 5700 VFA
  - 1. Right-click the neighboring zone, point to **Add Node to Zone**, and then click **Add Gateway**. The New Gateway wizard appears.
  - 2. Edit the gateway's properties according to its configuration and your network specifications (for details, see "Setting Gateway Properties" on page 7-4). Click **OK** to finish.
  - 3. After adding the gateway, right-click the gateway and then click Add Service. The New Gateway Service wizard appears.
  - 4. Edit the gateway service's properties according to its configuration and your network specifications (for details, see "Setting Gateway Service Properties" on page 7-8). Click **OK** to finish.
  - 5. To add additional services, repeat step 4 as many times as necessary.

The neighbor gateway and its services are now listed in the local 5700 VFA and may be dialed by 5700 VFA nodes simply by entering the gateway access number and the remote party's ISDN number. The gateway's services are now available for inclusion in Gateway Service Hunting Groups (see "Gateway Service Hunting Groups" on page 7-9).





Neighbor Gateway and Service

# Sharing MCU Services with Other Zones

In a similar way as for Gateway services, MCU services from the local 5700 VFA may be provided to neighbor nodes. Also, you may provide MCU services from neighboring zones to 5700 VFA nodes.

### **Direct MCU Service Dialing**

This method may be used for providing neighbor nodes with MCU services that are registered in the local 5700 VFA. It is easy to set up but requires users to obtain the local 5700 VFA zone prefix and enter it while dialing.

#### ► To set up direct MCU service dialing

1. Right-click the neighboring zone, point to **Properties**, and then click **Services**. The **Services** tab appears.



- 2. Select an MCU Service Permission Group. To limit the MCU services available to neighbor nodes, you can even create a specific Permission Group (see "MCU Service Permission Groups" on page 8-13).
- 3. Click OK.

To obtain the service, the neighbor node must dial:

# [Zone Prefix][MCU's directory number]

For example, 4004444, where

400 is the prefix and 4444 is the MCU's directory number.

#### Adding a Neighbor MCU to the Local 5700 VFA

This method may be used for providing 5700 VFA nodes with MCU services that are registered in a neighboring zone. Listing an MCU and its services under its neighboring zone in the Main View offers the following advantages:

Users do not need to obtain and add zone prefixes when they dial.

□ The listed MCU services may be placed in MCU Service Permission Groups in the local 5700 VFA.

#### To add a neighbor MCU to the local 5700 VFA

- 1. Right-click the neighboring zone, point to **Add Node to Zone**, and then click **Add MCU**. The New MCU wizard appears.
- Edit the MCU's properties according to its configuration and your multipoint conferencing specifications (for details, see "Setting MCU Properties" on page 8-3). Click OK to finish.
- 3. After adding the MCU, right-click the MCU and then click **Add Service**. The New MCU Service wizard appears.
- Edit the MCU service's properties according to its configuration and your multipoint conferencing specifications (for details, see "MCU Services" on page 8-7). Click OK to finish.
- 5. To add additional services, repeat step 4 as many times as necessary.

The neighbor MCU and its services are now listed in the local 5700 VFA and may be dialed by 5700 VFA nodes simply by dialing the MCU's directory number. The MCU's services are now available for inclusion in MCU Service Permission Groups (see "MCU Service Permission Groups" on page 8-13).



Neighbor MCU and Service

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the LDAP settings of the 3300 ICP).

Online directories, such as Microsoft ILS Servers and Novell NDS, are lists of persons or network resources which include descriptive and contact information about all entries. They may be used to look up someone's contact information or to retrieve a list of e-mail addresses. They are accessible through an Internet connection. The 5700 VFA supports access to online directories.

Using the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), 5700 VFA end points may locate any other person or node on a public X.500-based network (X.500 is a standard for directory services in a network). In such a network, directory information is consolidated in central servers located throughout the network. These servers coordinate their directory information so that each maintains an updated, current mail client directory.

An LDAP directory is usually organized in a "tree" hierarchy with levels of objects (similar to the System tree in the Main Administrator window). Each object in the hierarchy must have a unique name. An LDAP directory tree may consist of the following levels:

- The "root" directory (the starting place or the source of the tree)
- Countries
- Organizations (such as a company or government ministry)
- Organizational units (such as divisions and departments)
- Individuals (such as persons, files, and shared resources such as printers).

For example, a sample hierarchy may look like this:



uld represents a user ID for an entry

#### Sample LDAP Directory Hierarchy

An LDAP directory can be distributed among many servers. All of the LDAP servers may contain identical versions of the total directory which are synchronized periodically. An LDAP server that receives a request from a user may pass it to other servers as necessary, but ensures a single coordinated response for the user.

The 5700 VFA supports the following directory servers:

- Microsoft Internet Location Server (ILS)
- Microsoft Exchange Server
- Microsoft Window 2000 Active Directory
- Novell Directory Services (NDS)

This chapter provides the configuration settings required for the 5700 VFA to register with the respective LDAP directories. For information and instructions for installing and working with these applications, see the specific application's user guides.

# 10.1 Registering the 5700 VFA with an ILS

By supporting both Microsoft NetMeeting and Internet Location Server (ILS), the 5700 VFA can register with ILS servers, therefore providing its registered nodes with ILS services.

This section provides the required configuration information and values for registering the 5700 VFA and its users in the ILS.

#### To set up the 5700 VFA configuration in the ILS

- 1. Run the Microsoft Internet Information Server (IIS) application and open the Microsoft Management Console (MMC).
- 2. In the **Console** menu, click **Add\Remove Snap-in**. In the Add\Remove Snap-in dialog box, click **Microsoft Information Server** and then click **Add**. Click **OK** to confirm.
- 3. In the MMC, right-click **LDAP** and click **Properties**. The LDAP Service Properties appears. The following illustrations show suggested settings.

**NOTE** You may enter your own choices as the Anonymous Login User Name and Password (optional).

LDAP Service Properties for publo_server	
Service ILS Server Lagging Advanced	
Envection Timeout	
Maximum Connection: 12000	
Anonymous Logon	
User Name: InternetSuest	
Essavat	
PaswordAuthenization	
₽ Allere Grangeroue	
🗖 Şala (rođengdov)	
₽ Windows 81 Challenge/Response	
Egnesent:	
Carent Service	
OK. Cancel (192) Help	

Recommended LDAP Service Settings

# Chapter 10 Registering with LDAP Directories

LDAP Service Properties for pablo_server	×
Service ILS Server Logging Advanced	
Enable JLS Servel     Glent Fine to Live: 20 an insultes     Maximum Registered Users: 10 an insultes	1
F Enable ULP Ignerace	
	1
OK Cancel Active Help	

Recommended LDAP ILS Server Settings

LDAP Service Properties for pablo_server	×
Service ILS Server Logging Advanced	
By default, all computers will be:	
of C Equated Access	
😚 C Degied Access	
Except those listed below:	
Agoens IP Addens Subnet Nank	
Agt.	
<u>20.</u>	
Elegan	
🔽 Tanà Matanà Haoka at 112 - Sanàna amin'ny amin'ny amin'ny fisiana	٠l
Vacious website and by an its + services on the computer	
4 D96 📑 Andreas ensemb	
OK Cancel 6000 Heb	j

Recommended LDAP Advanced Settings

To complete the configuration, you must perform the ILS Installation 4 Verification.

In your web browser, enter the location http://IP address of local host/ils. Click the Installation Verification link.

Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the verification process.

# Setting Up the ILS Configuration in the 5700 VFA Administrator

Finally, you have to set up the ILS configuration for the 5700 VFA in the 5700 VFA Administrator



#### To set up the ILS configuration in the 5700 VFA

In the Main view, expand the Templates group. Right-click Desktop (or 1. other node type to be registered in the LDAP Server), point to **Property**, then 5700, and then click LDAP. In the Create an Entry in Server list, choose ILS and then click Apply.

Desktop Propertie	ts (Template)			×
Cabigory	Gateway Services   ISD Display online directory List node in the followin	N Call Routing U from this curves: ng LDAP servers:	N/A N/A	xal D: • •
Conversion Cal	Server Name LS LS LS V28 LS2 LS3 Exchange2	Node Entry N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A	-	Select All
Uner Dates	Open the LDAP Server	NA TWee to see all LI Cancel	AP server de	etaits. Help

#### Template's LDAP Properties

2. Click Show LDAP Servers. The LDAP Servers View appears.

Server Type	Server Name	Host Address	Host Port	Battenta Connection Interval	Default Directory	Domain	User	Password
8,5	11.2	Default_L1_Selver	208		interest.doordClass=RTHeir			
Detarge	Contange.	Detnik Goldunge für	509	1	contribution recipients, our Default	Setsuit Damain	Datiset, line:	
ND1	NDI	Default_NET_Terver	208		methodal articles		Default Liter	
49,200	Wit.	Default WOX Server	209	1	rundrigmizzion Unit.donDetput		Dersist steer	
6,5	8,12	Dartault 8.52	344	1	politerouti disertClass-RTPare			
6.2	8.92	Default, 8.02	299		PMAnterfulgeodClass-R7Pers			
Detarge	Exprended.	<b>Gerault Exchange Serv</b>	209	1	on-Mildon-respiration-Darient	Betaut Deman	Default liver	1000000
1016-2002	HOR 2	Delauk WOK, Server, J.	208		net-Departmention_1048.4c+Default		Datush Ser-	
	Site Server 6.5 5	Default title Server AL	1002	1	abject Classer #TiPerton			

LDAP Servers View

- 3. Make sure that the following information appears in the table:
  - Host address Exact host name or IP address of the LDAP server.
  - Port 389
  - Refresh Connection Interval number of seconds. This value must be greater than 0 ("0" indicates that there is no connection with the LDAP server). The recommended value is 30 (seconds).
  - Default Directory Folder as created in the ILS Server, reflecting the assigned organization ("o") and object class. For example, "o=Microsoft, objectClass=RTPerson".
  - Domain, User, Password keep these spaces blank.

To edit an entry, click in the relevant cell(s), then delete and type.

# 10.2 Registering the 5700 VFA with Microsoft Exchange Server

For systems using the Microsoft Exchange Server 5.5 for their messaging and collaboration, the 5700 VFA is compatible. The Exchange Server sets up directories in the form of a tree-like hierarchy (see the illustration on page 10-2). For example, your company may be the top of the tree, the next level may be an organization unit such as the 5700 VFA, Sales or Administration, and the next level may be individual Recipients, such as individual end points.

This section provides the required configuration information and values for registering the 5700 VFA and its users in a Microsoft Exchange Server.

# **NOTE** To be listed, a Recipient must already have an open account in the Microsoft Exchange Server.

#### To add 5700 VFA users to the Exchange Server

- 1. Run the Microsoft Exchange Administrator application and connect to a server.
- 2. In the Administrator tree, click the Organizational Unit (such as 5700 VFA) under which the users will be listed.
- 3. In the **File** menu, point to **New Other** and click **Recipients Container**. The Recipient's Properties dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **General** tab, enter a **Display Name** for the Recipient and the **Directory Name** under which the Recipient will appear on the tree.

In the **Permissions** tab, the name of the 5700 VFA appears as the source of the Recipient's various conferencing privileges.

- 5. In the Administrator tree, expand the 5700 VFA's Configuration object. Click Protocol to display available protocol entries.
- 6. Double-click LDAP (Directory) Site Defaults. The following illustrations show suggested settings.

#### Chapter 10 Registering with LDAP Directories



LDAP Site Defaults General Properties

LDAP (Directory) Sile Default: Properties	
General Autometers Accounts General Astronal Ide Time and	-
UDAP (Directory) Site Defaults	
P Abe governa actesi	
DI. Lecal 19	¢

LDAP Site Defaults Anonymous Properties

**NOTE** Set your firewall to permit anonymous access to and from the directory.

LDAP (Directory) Sile Delaultz Properties	
General Automotion Accountion Search Referate I de Tine aut	
by LDAP (Directory) Site Defaults	5
1 destroy menters	-
(* Smith "and" solution analysis as "adult" solution exercises (Set) (* Allow pdy "adult" solution exercises (Set)	
C Allow all substring reserves (slow)	
Magenary number of search results returned 1000	
DR. Execut grade	Help

LDAP Site Defaults Search Properties

**NOTE** For the **Maximum Number of Search Results**, enter a value equaling (*number of registered users* + 10).

essi Automostor Acceneral Seach Retents Ide Termod	
LDAP (Directory) Site Defail	ults
Danar close de sourcectores	
C Date de correctors	
Taxeout passed	

LDAP Site Defaults Idle Time-out Properties

# Setting Up the Exchange Server Configuration in the 5700 VFA Administrator

Finally, you have to set up the Exchange Server configuration for the 5700 VFA in the 5700 VFA Administrator.

**To set up the Exchange Server configuration in the 5700 VFA** 

 In the Main view, expand the Templates group. Right-click Desktop (or other node type to be registered in the LDAP Server), point to Property, then 5700 VFA, and then click LDAP. In the Create an Entry in Server list, choose Exchange and then click Apply.

DeskTop Proper	ties (Template)	×
Callegory	Pickup Permissions End Point H323 LDAP	11
(1) 1) 1)	Dente an entry in Server Hasharow Show LDAP Server.	•
Envertairen	Eretay in	
Univer Data		
	OK Cancel Asete	Help

Template's LDAP Properties

2. Click Show LDAP Servers. The LDAP Servers View appears.

Sec	rver ype	Server Name	Host Address	Host Port	Refresh Connection Interval	Default Directory	Domain	User	Password
1.1	ξ\$	112	Default_L1_Selver	208		enthorogant.dojeceClass=RTHeir			
Det	hange	Exchange.	Detnik Goldange für	209	1	contribution recipients, our Carpett	Setsuit Damain	Datiset, line:	
- N	£1	ND1	Default_NET_Terver	208		methalidar/visor		Default Liter	
100	1000	Wit.	Default WOX Server	209	1	runitryanization_Unit.donDetput		Dersist steer	
	6,5	8,12	Dartault 8.52	344		politersoft.digertClass-HTPare			
	1.5	8.32	Default, 8.02	299		e-Montanth disect Class-R7Pers			
Det	Aprice.	Exchange2	<b>Gerault Exchange Serv</b>	309	1	on-Mildon-recipients.ourDerault	Detaut Domain	Default liver	000000
1.00	-1880	HORID	Delauk WOK, Server, J.	328		nu+Departmention_1048.4c+Default		Datush Ser-	
	- 2	Site Server 6.5 5	Defail tite Server A.	1002	- 16	shipect Classes & Titleston			

LDAP Servers View

- 3. Make sure that the following information appears in the table:
  - Host address Exact host name or IP address of the LDAP server.
  - Port 389
  - Refresh Connection Interval number of seconds. This value must be greater than 0 ("0" indicates that there is no connection with the LDAP server). The recommended value is 30 (seconds).
  - Default Directory Folder as created in the Exchange Server, reflecting the assigned organization ("o"), organizational unit ("ou") and additional levels in the hierarchy ("cn", or common name). For example, "cn=recipients, ou=Site\_Name, o=Default Organization Name".
  - Domain Domain of the Exchange Server.
  - User Valid user in the Exchange Server domain, with access rights to its 5700 VFA default directory
  - Password Password as defined in the Exchange Server.

To edit an entry, click in the relevant cell(s), then delete and type.

# 10.3 Registering the 5700 VFA with Windows 2000 Active Directories

The 5700 VFA supports Microsoft Windows 2000 Active Directories, which sets up directories in schemas. The schemas are made up of sublevels called classes. Each class is made up of uniquely named attributes.

In the Active Directories Console, you must expand its schema by creating a new class titled "5700 VFA Node" and then create new attributes for the 5700 VFA with specific names.

This section provides the required configuration information, exact attribute names, and values for registering the 5700 VFA and its users in an Active Directories Server. To perform the tasks, you must open the Active Directories Console. Then, follow the series of procedures in this section.

# Adding a User with Full Configuration Rights

To extend the schema, you have to give full control (read and write permissions) to a user from the Schema Admin group.

Then, add a new Active Directory schema snap-in.

These tasks are basic Active Directories functions. If necessary, refer to the Active Directories documentation for instructions.
### Adding the 5700 VFA Attributes

You have to add specific attributes, or characteristics, for 5700 VFA objects to the snap-in.

- To add 5700 VFA attributes to the snap-in
  - 1. In the Active Directory Schema snap-in on the left side of the Active Directories Console, right-click the Attributes folder and then click Create Attribute.

Convon Nane	M-MTelephonyStateDescription
DAP Display Name	MONTelephony61ateDesception
hique 1/500 Disect (D.	1.2.840.113956.1.8000.35.1.10.2
iuntax and Range	
ijntac	Case Intensitive String
lemax	
dissimant.	

Creating New 5700 VFA Attributes

2. In the Create New Attribute dialog box, type identical names in the **Common Name** and the **LDAP Display Name** boxes.

In the Unique X500 Object ID box, type the OID of the attribute.

- **NOTE** The table following this procedure contains the required attribute names and their respective OIDs. Enter them as they appear in the table.
  - 3. In the Syntax list, select Case Insensitive String.
  - 4. Click OK.

5. Repeat this procedure for all the attributes in the following table.

Attribute Name	OID
MXMTelephonyStateDescription	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.2
MXMUserType	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.3
MXMBChannelNum1	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.4
MXMBChannelNum2	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.5
MXMBChannelNum3	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.6
MXMBChannelNum4	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.7
MXMBChannelNum5	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.8
MXMBChannelNum6	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.9
MXMRestricted56k	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.10
MXMVideoSupport	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.11
MXMAudioSupport	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.12
MXMInCall	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.13
MXMH323Alias	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.14
MXMDeskTopUserDataNotes	1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.15

### Adding the 5700 VFA Node Class

You must now create an 5700 VFA MXMNode class, to which you will later add the attributes you created in the previous section.

**•** To create the 5700 VFA Node class

1. In the Active Directory Schema snap-in on the left side of the Active Directories Console, right-click the Classes folder and then click Create Class.

Conner Name	Moning
LDAP Diploy Name	MoMNade
Linique 7/500 @bject ID	1.2.640 113556 1.6000 35.1.10.1
inheritance and Type	9 (A)
Esterni Clarc:	organizationaPerson
Class Lype:	Etucked

Creating the MXMNode Class

- 2. In the Create New Schema Class wizard, type **MXMNode** in the **Common Name** and the **LDAP Display Name** boxes.
- 3. In the **Unique X500 Object ID** box, type **1.2.840.113556.1.8000.35.1.10.1** as the OID of the attribute.
- 4. In the **Parent Class** box, enter **organizationalPerson**.
- 5. In the Class Type list, select Structural.
- 6. Click Next.



Adding 5700 VFA Attributes to MXMNode Class

7. Next to the **Optional** list, click **Add**.

elect Schema Object		<u>Ÿ ×</u>
Select a schema object;		
nS-SQL-Type nS-SQL-VecodeSot0 ider nS-SQL-VecodeSot0 ider nS-SQL-Veco ns-SQL-Veco nu-tContex	OK     Cancel	
MoNADOSTIPOL NONECharnetNum1 NONECharnetNum2 NONECharnetNum3 NONECharnetNum5 NONECharnetNum5 NONECharnetNum5 NONECharnetNum5 NONH320Mas NONH320	-	
N094VideoSuppot name nameServiceFlags nCName		

Selecting 5700 VFA Attributes for the MXMNode Class

8. In the Select Schema Object dialog box, select all the new MXM attributes and click **OK**.

9. Right-click the **MXMNode** Class object on the left side of the Active Directories Console, and then click **Properties**. In the Properties dialog box, click the **Relationship** tab.

Palent Clain:	organizationalPerson	
Augilary Cherrer		Add.
		Renter
Possible Superior	organizational.linit	Add
		Timmyr (

MXMNode Class Relationship

10. Opposite the Possible Superior box, click Add.

11. In the Select Schema Object dialog box, select an Organizational Unit and then click **OK**.



Selecting an Organizational Unit for the MXMNode Class

The MXMNode class is now contained inside the selected Organizational Unit.

#### **Granting Full Control Permissions to Users for the Class**

In addition to the administrator (you), select at least one of your 5700 VFA users to have full control (read and write properties) permission in the MXMNode class.

- 1. Right-click the **MXMNode** Class object on the left side of the Active Directories Console, and then click **Properties**. In the Properties dialog box, click the **Security** tab.
- 2. In the Names list, select a 5700 VFA user and then select **Full Control** in the **Allow** column. Click **OK**.

Nate	•	141
Adren, Adrein, (Adrein) (Freerver 2000. com)	915	Barrow
Adhistrator (SERVER 20000 Adhistmetor)	-	- Martinet 1 at
Danale Advice SERVED 2000 Down Adv.	-	
Contant Agents (SCHAER2000) Contant Adel		
	•	
which we are a set of the set of	Alosi	Derg
Full Carviol	B	
Read	ø	
Wither	E	
Create All Child Objects	8	
Delete 44 Onld Objects		
Advant 1		
California (California)		

Granting Full Control Privileges to a 5700 VFA User

# Setting the Properties of the 5700 VFA Attributes

In this procedure, you must assign specific properties to all the 5700 VFA attributes.

#### **•** To set the properties of the 5700 VFA attributes

- To set the properties of the 5700 virk attributes
- 1. In the **Attributes** folder, right-click an MXM attribute and then click **Properties**.

Description	H-9-H-4 udioS upport
Europort Name	Pedetudol upper
×500.00	1.2.84811399611222334.475
Syntax and Range	
Spritas	Case Inservative Storg
Minimum	1. Contract (1. Co
Maginary	
The articute is of	gle-value)
Show objects of Opjactivate this at Index this at Broke	this class while backsing Andreas to its the Active Detectory (but to the Global Catalog

Setting 5700 VFA Attribute Properties

- 2. In the **Description** box, enter the identical name of the attribute.
- 3. Select the following options:
  - Show objects of this class while browsing
  - Replicate this attribute to the Global Catalog
- 4. Click OK.

#### Creating an Organizational Unit for Your 5700 VFA

At this time, create a new Organizational Unit which will be your 5700 VFA's working folder in the LDAP server.



1. Expand the Active Directory Users and Computers snap-in on the left side of the Active Directories Console. Right-click the LDAP Server object, point to New and then click Organizational Unit.

Cente in server2000	com/	
Naria		
etradiwarkingFolder		
		 1 1000

Creating the 5700 VFA Organizational Unit

- 2. In the Name box, type MXMWorkingFolder.
- 3. Click OK.

#### **Giving Permissions to 5700 VFA Users**

To provide 5700 VFA users with LDAP directory services, you have to give them "read" permission. In addition, you have to give one user full control permission (read and write).

- 1. Select the Active Directory Users and Computers snap-in on the left side of the Active Directories Console. In the View menu, click Advanced Features.
- 2. Right-click the MXMWorkingFolder object and then click **Delegate Control**. The Delegate Control wizard appears.

3. Select all the 5700 VFA users in the list and click Add. Click OK.

Select Users, Computers, or Gringes		<u>71 x</u>
Look in SEntire Directory		-
Name	In Folder	
PV8LDS_DEVELOP     Develop     Develop     Admin.4dmin.(Admint@verver.2000.com)	server2000.com/Computers server2000.com/Suitin server2000.com/Users	1.27
C (604 Date (604Date (Server200Loan)	terver2000.com/Utert	
0.11 Diec <u>k</u> Names		
MOH User (MOHLiser@serves2000.com)		
	OK.	Carcet

Selecting 5700 VFA Users

4. Select Create a custom task to delegate and then click Next.



Creating a Custom Task to Delegate

5. Select This folder, existing objects in this folder, and creation of new objects in this folder and then click Next.

Delegate control of  This fable, existing objects in this fable, and creation of new objects in this fable  C Orde the following objects in the fable:  aCSR ecourceLimit objects aComputer objects Computer objects Computer objects Computer objects Group	Indicate the scope of the task you want to	) delegale.	é
This folder, existing objects in this folder, and creation of new objects in this folder     Orde the following objects in the folder     Orde the following objects in the folder     Order the following objects     Order the following objects     Order the folders     Order the following objects     Order the folders     Orders     Order the folders     Order the folders     Order the folders     Orders     Or	Delegate cantrol of		
Crighter rollward objects in the table     ACSRecourceLimits objects     Certificationshultwoldy objects     Computer objects     Computer objects     Computer objects     Computer objects     Googn objects     Googn objects     Googn objects     Googn objects     Googn objects	F This loke, existing objects in this loke	e, and creation of new objects in	n the lokier
	CSRecouceLinks objects     certilicationAuthority objects     Computer objects     Commission objects     Connection objects     Gouga objects     Gouga objects		-

Selecting All Objects in the Current Folder

6. Select the **Read** permission for all the users and then click **Next**.

Delegation of Control Wizard		×
Pressions Select the presistions you want to deleg	ain.	B
Show there permissions:		
P Germal		
🗭 Popety-quelle		
Cavation/deletion of specific child obj	ect:	
Penaluiora		
Prof Control Pread With Control (11 Child Sharets		3
Celete All Child Objects		ъ
	(Bach: Next	Cancel

Delegating Read Permission to the 5700 VFA Users

7. Click Finish.

8. Right-click the **MXMNode** Class object on the left side of the Active Directories Console, and then click **Properties**. In the Properties dialog box, click **Security**.

In the Names list, select the 5700 VFA users and then select **Read** in the **Allow** column. Click **Apply**.

Name 🛙 Admin Admin (Admin/Roman 2000 com)	-	Age
Administrator (SERVER20000/Administrator)	112	Bernve
Authenticated Users	-	
Everyone Administrative R2000/Domain Admin Everyone		
•	-	3
ermittere:	ABOW	Deny
Full Centrol		
Reat	R	
Write		
Create All Child Objects		
Delete All Oxid Objecto		
Advanced		
withmost		

Granting Read Privileges to 5700 VFA Users

9. In the Names list, select one 5700 VFA user to receive full read and write permissions. Select **Full Control** in the **Allow** column. Click **OK**.

# Setting Up the LDAP Configuration in the 5700 VFA Administrator

Finally, you have to set up the LDAP Server configuration for the 5700 VFA in the 5700 VFA Administrator.

#### To set up the LDAP Configuration of the 5700 VFA



1. In the 5700 VFA Administrator, click the LDAP Servers View button.

Server Type	Server Name	Host Address	Hod Port	Refresh Connection Interval	Default Directory	Domain	User	Passwortt
812	143	Delast, L1, Selver	208		infiliences/LobjectClass=RTHeir			
Detarge	Contemps.	Detaut, Gotange, far	509	1	contribution recipients, our Default	Betault Ownam	Default, line:	
NDI.	NDI	Default ADI, Terver	208		martiality or Volum.		Default Uner	
999,2000	WIT.	Default WOX Server	209	1	rundrumization Unit.donDetput		Dersit deef	
6,5	8,12	Dartault_8.52	344		politersoft.disertClass-RTPare			
5.2	8.32	Default, 8.12	299		arMenterit description R7Pers			
Deteros	Exchange?	Germit Exchange liery	304	1	overlation overlappend, our Dargett	Betaut Domain	Default lizer	000000
1016-0000	HORC2	Delaut WOK, Server, 3	328		nu+ Organization 1848 Art Delault		Datush Ser-	-
	Site Server 6.5 S	Orbit lite Server AL	1002	1	sbject.Classrell/Ferton			
	Server Type E3 Dottarge K21 Wit,300 K3 E3 E4 Dottarge Wit,300	Server Type Bill Bartery Detrops Bill Bartery Bill Bartery Bill Bartery Bill Bartery Bill Bartery Bill Bartery Bartery Bill Bartery Bartery Bill Bartery Bill Bartery Bartery Bill Bartery Bill Bartery Bar	Server Type: Server Marrie Host Address 103 U.3 Default, U.3 Server M03 Kon Default, U.3 Server M03 Kon Default, V.3 Server, V.3 Se	Server Type Server Mane Host Adminess Host Part Datage Screep Letter, Screep 39 Both Screep Letter, Screep 30 Both Screep Letter, Screep 39 Both Screep Letter, Screep 30 Both Screep 10 Both Screep 10	Server Type         Sensor Mane         Host Address         Host Port         Host Address         Host Port         Host Address           103         0.3         Default_L3_larver         38         8           Motion         Default_L32_larver         38         8           Motion         Default_L32_larver         38         8           Motion         Default_L32_larver         38         8           Motion         Default_L32_larver         38         8           Default_L32_larver         Default_L32_larver         38 <td>Server Type         Sensor Mane         Host Ameress         Hast Post Post         Befrech Post         Default Denethary Detauge           10.1         10.1         Default LL_beiver         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FFFMetro Detauge         F         PM0000FFFMetro Detauge         PM0000FFFMetro Detauge         F         PM0000FFFFMetro Detauge         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F</td> <td>Servert Type         Senuer Manne         Host Adverses         Hust Post         Default Conception         Default Directory         Default Directory           16.3         16.3         Default L1, invier         38         8         PMonostit, diperclass/PMPerson           16.4         16.3         Default, L2, invier         38         8         PMonostit, diperclass/PMPerson           16.4         16.4         Default, L2, invier         38         8         PMonostit, diperclass/PMPerson           16.5         16.7         Default, 43.7, invier         38         8         monMMA           16.6         MAR         Default, 43.7, invier         38         8         modMMA           16.6         Address, 43.7, invier         38         8         molMMA         16           16.6         Address, 43.7, invier         38         8         molMMA         16           16.8         Address, 16.2         28         8         molMMA         16         16           16.8         Default, 16.2         28         8         molMMA         16         16           16.8         Default, 16.2, invier, 16         18         16         16         16         16           16.8         Default,</td> <td>Servert Type         Servert Manne         Host Adverses         Hust Post         Default Connection         Default Directory         Default Directory           16.3         6.1         Default SL, Server         30         8         Printeroin Intervent         Printeroin Connection         Printeroin Connection         Default Directory         Default Directory         Default Directory           16.1         6.1.1         Default SL, Server         30         8         Printeroin Confidence         Server         Server         Default SL, Server SL, Server         Default SL, Server         Default SL, Server         Default SL, Server         Default SL, Server SL, Server         Default SL, Server SL, Server</td>	Server Type         Sensor Mane         Host Ameress         Hast Post Post         Befrech Post         Default Denethary Detauge           10.1         10.1         Default LL_beiver         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         PM0000FL0perClass*FFMetro Detauge         208         F         PM0000FFFMetro Detauge         F         PM0000FFFMetro Detauge         PM0000FFFMetro Detauge         F         PM0000FFFFMetro Detauge         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F         F	Servert Type         Senuer Manne         Host Adverses         Hust Post         Default Conception         Default Directory         Default Directory           16.3         16.3         Default L1, invier         38         8         PMonostit, diperclass/PMPerson           16.4         16.3         Default, L2, invier         38         8         PMonostit, diperclass/PMPerson           16.4         16.4         Default, L2, invier         38         8         PMonostit, diperclass/PMPerson           16.5         16.7         Default, 43.7, invier         38         8         monMMA           16.6         MAR         Default, 43.7, invier         38         8         modMMA           16.6         Address, 43.7, invier         38         8         molMMA         16           16.6         Address, 43.7, invier         38         8         molMMA         16           16.8         Address, 16.2         28         8         molMMA         16         16           16.8         Default, 16.2         28         8         molMMA         16         16           16.8         Default, 16.2, invier, 16         18         16         16         16         16           16.8         Default,	Servert Type         Servert Manne         Host Adverses         Hust Post         Default Connection         Default Directory         Default Directory           16.3         6.1         Default SL, Server         30         8         Printeroin Intervent         Printeroin Connection         Printeroin Connection         Default Directory         Default Directory         Default Directory           16.1         6.1.1         Default SL, Server         30         8         Printeroin Confidence         Server         Server         Default SL, Server SL, Server         Default SL, Server         Default SL, Server         Default SL, Server         Default SL, Server SL, Server         Default SL, Server

LDAP Servers View

- 2. Make sure that the following information appears in the table in the W2K row:
  - Host address Exact host name or IP address of the LDAP server.
  - Port 389
  - Refresh Connection Interval number of seconds. This value must be greater than 0 ("0" indicates that there is no connection with the LDAP server). The recommended value is 30 (seconds).
  - Default Directory Path as created in the Active Directory tree, reflecting the assigned organizational unit ("ou") and domain controls. For example,

#### "ou=MXMWorkingFolder,dc=servername,dc=com".

- Domain keep this space blank.
- User Valid user in the Active Directories domain, with full control rights to the MXMWorkingFolder folder. For example, "su,cn=users,dc=server\_name,dc=com".
- Password Password for this user as defined in the Active Directories application.

To edit an entry, click in the relevant cell(s), then delete and type.

# 10.4 Registering the 5700 VFA with Novell Directory Services (NDS)

The 5700 VFA is compatible with Novell NDS® scalable LDAP directory services. The NDS sets up directories in schemas and hierarchies.

NDS hierarchies are made up of sublevels called classes. Each class is made up of uniquely named objects.

We recommend that you register your 5700 VFA and its registered users either during NDS installation or while the 5700 VFA is shut down. You must expand its schema by creating a new class titled "MXMNode" and then create new attributes for the 5700 VFA with specific names.

This section provides the required configuration information, exact attribute names, and values for registering the 5700 VFA and its users in an NDS LDAP Server. Follow the series of procedures.

# **Creating 5700 VFA Attributes**

First, you have to add specific attributes, or characteristics, for 5700 VFA objects.

#### **T**o create 5700 VFA attributes

- 1. Run the NDS management application.
- 2. In the Object menu, click Schema Manager.
- 3. In the Schema Manager, click Attributes.
- 4. To make a new attribute, click **Create**. The Create Attribute wizard appears.
- 5. In the Attribute Name box, type the exact name of the attribute and click Next.

#### Registering with LDAP Directories Chapter 10

BODOS ABULIES	
htsdag (334)	
	A John
costRelate	in the second second
Ebssed Object Name	Provide I
How Unlimited Credit	Tican
kustA Encryption Key	The second se
uate Exclusion Kay	To Taylor
ADD CONTRACTOR	
ADD CONTRACT REPORT OF THE	
and the last list	
uttFath	
ustPoker	
kuditType	
Address Revision	
luxClass Object Class Backup	
kusiliany Class Flag	
Seck U.n.k	
Andery Object Restriction	14
skidory mapery	~
ander Settinn Leve	

#### Schema Manager

To contenue, data News	Novell	Abitude parts MonthAddress
To contenue, class Field	200	AGNT CI
To continue, class Filent	-	
To continue, click Paint		
To continue, click hand,		
		To continue, click hield.

#### Entering Attribute Name

6. In the **Syntax** List, select a value that describes the way that item may be written or requested in the directory service. For working with the 5700 VFA, select **Case Ignore String** and click **Next**.

Novell	Sentar Sentar Case Ignore String	
	]	
$\sim$		
	To continue, click Hand.	

Selecting a Syntax

7. As flags, select Single valued and Public read. Click Next.

Novell	Set the Bags for the new atribu	ы.
	Engle valued     Synchronige immediately     Eutolic mad     Eutolic mad     Write managed	Per repika P Sgeo Lanar - Lanar -
	To continue, slick Next	

Selecting Flags

- 8. Click **Next** until the last page of the wizard, keeping the default values for the new attribute. In the last page, click **Finish**.
- 9. Repeat steps 3 8, setting identical properties as specified, for the following attribute names.

MXMIPAddress	MXMBChannelNum2	MXMRestricted56k
MXMTelephonyState Description	MXMBChannelNum3	MXMVideoSupport
MXMUserType	MXMBChannelNum4	MXMAudioSupport
MXMNotes	MXMBChannelNum5	MXMInCall
MXMBChannelNum1	MXMBChannelNum6	

### Creating the 5700 VFA MXMNode Class

You must now create an MXMNode class based on the default super class named User. Attribute flags and rules will be inherited from the super class.



**CAUTION** Do not make changes to the NDS default schemas. Otherwise, the LDAP functions of the 5700 VFA may be affected.

#### To create the MXMNode class

- 1. In the **Object** menu, click **Schema Manager**. Click **Create** to open the Create Class wizard.
- 2. In the **Class Name** box, type **MXMNode** as the exact name of the class and click **Next**.

NI ID					
unina, cir	ch Piert.				
	natina, di	roevinge, oles field	n serviceuse, crisis Point • gant +	rtewinge, disk Next • 13x5 Sect + Cens	namilinge, citis Nert + 1945 - Stort - Cernet

Entering Class Name

3. As the Class flag, select **Effective Class** (for creating instances from this class) and then click **Next**.

	C Antiery Claus
T	
	Container Class
	Tir centinua, cites Nant.

Selecting Class Flag

4. From the **Available Classes** list, choose **User** as the existing class from which the new class will inherit attributes. Click **Next**.

-	Austake dassec pretition
J	Currue Roccarie SAS Security Security Server Template Top The Roct
	Autiliary classes do not require inheritance. Nulligie dans inheritance is envirited, out wit generally suggested. To continue, cit & Next.

Inheriting Attributes from Existing Classes

5. In the **Available Attributes** list, do not add mandatory attribute(s) for the new class. By default, the class already includes the attributes **CN**, **Object Class** and **Surname**. Click **Next**.



Selecting Mandatory Attributes

6. Choose optional attribute(s) for the new class. From the **Available Attributes** list, choose all the attributes that you created earlier in this procedure (named **MXM...**). Click **Next**.

	Molistie aftitutes		Additivese attrakted	
J.	Vetures Vetures Vetures Space Relations eventual Cost Increases: Deskit Cost Increase: Deskit Cost I	- - 	MOMAdin Export MoteC transmithant AdMC transmithant MoteC transmithant	1. To be a local data
	To continue, citrix Next			

Selecting the Optional Attributes

- 7. For the naming attributes, click **Next** without adding more attributes. For the Container Classes, click **Finish** without adding more classes.
- 8. Restart the server and then run the NDS management application again.

### Creating an 5700 VFA Container

A separate container on the NDS Services tree keeps the MXMNode objects apart from the other NDS objects.

#### **•** To create a separate 5700 VFA container

- 1. Select the organization or organizational unit to which you want to place the MXMNode class and its objects.
- 2. Right-click, point to New and then click Organizational Unit.
- 3. Type MXM as the Organization Unit's name and click OK.



New MXM Container on Tree

### Setting Up the LDAP Group Object Configuration

The LDAP Group contains the class and attribute mappings and security policies for one or more LDAP servers. If you plan to use the same configuration on more than one LDAP server, it's easier to set up one LDAP Group object and assign it to each LDAP server in the LDAP Group Server List Properties.

#### To set up the LDAP Group Object configuration

- 1. In the container that holds the NetWare Server object, double-click LDAP Group.
- 2. In the LDAP Properties **General** tab, select **Allow Clear Text Passwords**. This option enables the exchange of passwords over non-encrypted connections, and is required for the 5700 VFA's normal operation with the NDS Service.

operties of LDAP G	Group - RD-ORENS_NDS-NDS	
General "Culi? Group General	Server List   Athinke Mep   Clies Mee   NDS Rights +   Other   Rights to Fles and	(others
Referral Option		
· Rheave traver	23#	
Traverse If to	bund no refersals	
T Always refer	Default Referral	

LDAP Group General Properties Setting for 5700 VFA

3. Click the Attribute Map tab, where you will map the NDS schema names of the new 5700 VFA attributes (created in the section, "Creating 5700 VFA Attributes" on page 10-26) to corresponding LDAP names.

4. Click Add. In the Attribute Mapping dialog box, choose a new 5700 VFA attribute from the NDS Attribute list. Enter that same name into the LDAP Attribute box and click OK.

Repeat this step for all new attributes.

Attribute Mapping		×
LDAP Atribute	NDE Attribut	
1000PARANES	MONPAddress	1
	ok [[	Cantel
	100000	

Mapping the 5700 VFA Attributes to LDAP Attributes

The new 5700 VFA attributes are now part of the LDAP Group configuration.

onerni   Server Lid. Attribute Map LDAP Group Azriste Map	Ches Mae   NOS Rights +   Other   Rights	to Files and Folders
LEMP ADIDUNI	NDS Abribulius	- 1 I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I
idapServerList	LDAP Server List	- · · · ·
idapAttributeMap	LDAP Athibute Map v11	Down
IdapClassMap	LDAP Class Map v11	Down
IdapAllowClearTextPassword	LDAP Allow Clear Test Password	1.00
IdapAnonymousidentity	LDAP Anonymous identity	
ktspServerDN	LDAP Server	
ld spi-GeyMateri siName	LDAP keyMaterialName	
idapSearchRefemalUsage	LDAP searchReferralUsage	1.2
M/M/ideoSupport.	MitMideoSupport	
MOMTelephonyStateDescription	MiMTelephonyStateDescription	
MOMUserType	MitMuterType	
MOMRestricted56k	M/MRRestricted58k	
MORNISES	MOMPAGES	1
MOREPAddress	M/34PAddress	
MMInCal	MMINCal	
MOMBChannelNum6	MOMBChannelNumB	Adu
ACM0ChanselNum5	MORDChantelNum5	- F
NOMEChannelNum4	MOMEChannelNum4	Delete
MONEChannelNum3	MOMBChannelNum3	
M0MBChannelNum2	M0MBChannelNum2	Modify
M/MEChantelNum1	M/MEChantelNum1	•

Mapped 5700 VFA Attributes

5. Click **OK** and restart the server and then run the NDS management application again.

### Adding a Trustee for the 5700 VFA MXMNode Container

To use the MXMNode container, you have to set up a user with rights for creating and updating objects in the container. Other than the administrator with Super User privileges, who has full rights on the whole NDS Service tree, it is recommended to designate an 5700 VFA user as a Trustee, who has rights for creating and deleting objects in the MXMNode container.



#### To add a trustee for the 5700 VFA MXMNode container

- Right-click the MXMNode organizational unit, point to Trustees of this 1. object and then click Add Trustees.
- Browse the NDS tree to find the 5700 VFA user that will be the trustee 2 and click **OK**
- For this user's Entry Rights and Attribute Rights, select Create and 3. Delete (if you want, you can select additional rights).
- Click **OK** 4

### Setting Up the LDAP Configuration in the 5700 VFA Administrator

Finally, you have to set up the LDAP Server configuration for the 5700 VFA in the 5700 VFA Administrator.

#### ► To set up the LDAP Configuration of the 5700 VFA



In the 5700 VFA Administrator, click the LDAP Servers View button. 1.

	Server Type	Server Name	Host Address	Host Port	Refresh Connection Interval	Default Directory	Domain	User	Passwortt
1	8,5	11.2	Default_L1_Selver	208		enthorogant.dojeceClass=RTHeir			
	Destance	Contange.	Detnik Goldange für	509	1	contribution recipients, our Carpett	Setsuit Damain	Datiset, line:	
	NEIL	NDI	Default_NET_Terver	208		methalidar/visor		Default Liter	
	999,2000	Wit.	Default WOX Server	209	1	rundrigmenten UntukerDetaut		Dersist steer	
-	8,5	8.12	Dartault 8.52	344	1	mildensett.digertClass-RTPare			
	8.2	8.92	Default, 8.02	299		e-Montanth disect Class-R7Pers			
	Derkarge	Exchange2	<b>Gerault Exchange Serv</b>	309	1	on-Mildon-recipients.ourDerault	Betaut Disman	Default liver	1000000
	1016-0000	HORCE	Delauk WOK, Server, J.	328		nu+Departmention_1048.4c+Default		Datush Ser-	
		Site Server 6.5 5	Default title Server, R.	1002	1.	shipect Classes & Therpore			

LDAP Servers View

- 2. Make sure that the following information appears in the table:
  - Host address Exact host name or IP address of the LDAP server.
  - Port 389
  - Refresh Connection Interval number of seconds. This value must be greater than 0 ("0" indicates that there is no connection with the LDAP server). The recommended value is 30 (seconds).
  - Default Directory Path as created in NDS Tree, reflecting the assigned organization ("o") and organizational unit ("ou"). For example, "ou=MXM, o=vcon".
  - Domain keep this space blank.
  - User Valid user in the Exchange Server domain, with access rights to its MXM default directory. For example, "su, ou=MXM, o=vcon."
  - Password Password as defined in the NDS.

To edit an entry, click in the relevant cell(s), then delete and type.

#### 11 INITIATING VIDEOCONFERENCES FROM THE 5700 VFA ADMINISTRATOR

**NOTE** Administrator-initiated calling and hang-up are only available for licensed users of the Conference Control Option. If you want to add this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.

#### 11.1 Administrator-Initiated Dialing

As a system administrator, you can initiate a point-to-point videoconference by connecting two end points listed in the Administrator's Main View. Calls may also be initiated to end points in neighboring zones.

To initiate a point-to-point call through the Administrator

- 1 Select the parties for the videoconference.
- Right-click and then click Initiate point-to-point call. 2
- Make any changes required in the call properties. Otherwise, leave the 3 default settings. For a description of the properties, see "Setting Point-to-Point Videoconference Properties" on page 11-2.
- Click Initiate Call 4

Callinne	16724/01082483	
Parts #1	1006	
Party #2	1066	_
Initiating Entity	1005	*
Call Bandwidth	384 - Khan	
Cali Status Dec	play in Node Status View Call Status in Node Status View	
17 Show Call	Status in tals: 06/24/04 08:21:30	- 2

Initiating a Point-to-Point Videoconference

#### Chapter 11 Initiating Videoconferences From the 5700 VFA Administrator

#### 11.2 Setting Point-to-Point Videoconference Properties

If necessary, change point-to-point videoconference properties before connecting the two end points.

Call Name	Name of the videoconference. This name will identify this call in the CDR.
Party #1; Party #2	The two end points in the videoconference.
Initiating Entity	End point that dials to initiate the videoconference.
Call Bandwidth	Maximum bandwidth allocated for the videoconference
Call Status Display in Node Status View	Select <b>Show Call Status in Tab</b> to display the call status in the Node Status View in a specific tab. The name or description listed here is also listed on the tab.
	Select <b>Don't show Call Status in Node Status View</b> if you don't want to monitor the videoconference in the Node Status View.

#### 11.3 Administrator-Initiated Hang Up

As a system administrator, you can hang up open calls that include selected users or users within a selected group. For example, if more than one user in the Sales Administrative group are involved in videoconferences but you have to terminate all of that group's calls, select the Sales Administrative group object.



#### To hang up calls through the Administrator

- 1. Select the end point(s) or group object that includes the users that you want to disconnect
- 裔
- In the toolbar, click the Hang Up Calls button. 2.

All calls involving the selected users are therefore disconnected.

# 12 SETTING UP AD-HOC VIDEOCONFERENCES MANAGED BY A 5720 VCB

**NOTE** The 5720 VCB is available only for licensed users of the Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge option. If you want to add this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.

The Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge (5720 VCB) is an application that enables the initiation and management of an ad-hoc videoconference, which is a multipoint vidoeoconference that was expanded from a point-to-point conference by one of the conference's parties.

The 5720 VCB supports one open session at any single time with up to five parties. The conference's video may be displayed by one of the following methods:

Voice-Activated Switching	The participants see the video of the participant whose audio signal is strongest. For example, the non- speaking participants see the person speaking.	dir.
Continuous Presence	Several participants in a multipoint conference are viewed and heard simultaneously.	

**NOTE** When the 5700 VCA is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), the conference video is always displayed in Continuous Presence mode.

For instructions on installing the 5720 VCB, see "Installing the 5720 VCB" on page 2-6.

Chapter 12 Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB

#### Setting Up the 5720 VCB Configuration 12.1

After installation of the 5720 VCB, a VCB object appears in the 5700 VFA Administrator's Main View. The VCB object includes a pre-defined service that defines the allocation of available resources for ad-hoc videoconferences.



#### 5720 VCB Entry in Main View

# **5720 VCB Properties**

5720 VCB Properties define the video and audio properties of its ad-hoc videoconferences



#### To set the Properties for ad-hoc videoconferencing

- 1 Right-click the VCB node and then click Properties. The Properties dialog box for the 5720 VCB opens to the General tab.
- 2. Change properties according to your ad-hoc videoconferencing specifications, or keep the default settings (for descriptions of the properties, see the following subsections).
- 3. To implement the changes and proceed to another tab in the dialog box, click **Apply** and then the appropriate tab.
- 4. To implement all the changes and close the dialog box, click **OK**.

**NOTE** Any changes will take effect for the next ad-hoc session.

### **General Properties**

The General tab contains identity information of the 5720 VCB.

VCB_ON_VFA-SER	VER Properties (METEL Conference Bridge)	×
VELON_INA SER Calegory 5000 Extra Update	VUR. Properties (METEL Conference Bridge) General Status Friewall Product Info Description: VEB_ON_VFA SERVER H 323 Addess Adas : VEB_ON_VFA SERVER Type H 323 See more addresses of the Address Info Network Address: 10.39.15.20 Build Number 3.10.M11.028.VD2	
	OK Cancel Accel	Help

5720 VCB - General Properties

In the General Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Description	Identity of the 5720 VCB. This name will appear in the Main View after the login process is finished.
H.323 Address	
Alias	The 5720 VCB's alias name.
Туре	The type of address used by the 5720 VCB for registering with the 5700 VFA.
Network Address	IP address of the 5720 VCB.
Build Number	Version information for the 5720 VCB.

#### **Status Properties**

The Status tab contains login and logout information of the 5720 VCB.

VCB_ON_VFA-SER	VER Properties (MITEL Conference Bridge)	×
Category	General Statut Firewall ProductInto	
*æ*	Last logon on: 12/02/02/02/03/11/05	-
5700	Last logout an: Never	
۹.		
Software Update		
	OK Cancel Apply Help	

5720 VCB - Status Properties

### **Firewall Properties**

The Firewall tab contains identity information your firewall.



5720 VCB - Firewall Properties

### **Product Info Properties**

The Product Info tab contains product information of the 5720 VCB.

VEB_ON_VEA-SER	VER Properties (METEL Conference Bridge)	×
Callegory 5000 Software Lipdate	General     Statut     Firewall     Product Into       Vendor ID:     Product ID:       Vendor ID:     Location:       Location:     Add New Services to this Group       Cet MCU Service Permission: Group     •	Help

5720 VCB - Product Info Properties

In the Product Info Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Vendor ID	Identity of the end point manufacturer
Product ID	Identity of the conferencing tool used by the end point.
Version ID	Version number of the videoconferencing tool, for identification purposes.
Location	Physical location of the 5720 VCB.
Add New Services to this Group	Choose the group to which the new services will be added.

Chapter 12 Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB

### **Update Version Properties**

The Update Version tab contains se	oftware version update	information for	the 5720
VCB.			

VEB_ON_VEA-SER	VER Properties (MITEL Conference Bridge)
Category 5700 Software Lipclete	Update Version Imperioriation Update FTP Update Paramet  Pequiled Version Current Version Universe - Outlet 11 OM11: 0201 Y022, Application 31000254 OK Cancel Acety Help

5720 VCB - Update Version Properties

In the Update Version Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Required	Minimum 5720 VCB version required to work with this
Version	version of 5700 VFA.

Current Version Version of the installed 5720 VCB.

#### **Impersonation Properties**

The **Impersonation** tab contains information on the administrator that has access to the software update network drive.

VEB_ON_VEA-SER	VER Properties (METEL Conference Bridge)
Category	Update Version Impersonation Update FTP Update Paraw   Impersonation  Please enter on account that is an administrator on the upgraded PC and has access rights to the network drive you defined for the neuronal version.  Leave the fields blank in order to use the logged on user account.  Name: N/A.  Password:  Domain: N/A.
	N/A  OK Cancel Acety Help

5720 VCB - Impersonation Properties

Chapter 12 Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB

#### **Update FTP Properties**

The **Update FTP** tab contains information on the FTP server for the software update.

VCB_ON_VFA-SER	VER. Properties (METEL Conference Bridge) 🛛 🗙
Category	Update Version Impersonation Update FTP Update Param
*97 <b>*</b>	FTP (for downloading from end user PC)
5700	User Name: N/A.
۹.	Password
Software Update	IP Address N/A
	Directory: N/A
	OK Cancel Apply Help

5720 VCB - Update FTP Properties

In the Update FTP Properties tab, the following properties appear:

User name	User name to access the FTP server.
Password	Password to access the FTP server.
IP Address	IP address of the FTP server.
Directory	Directory of the software update files.

#### **Update Parameters Properties**

The **Update Parameters** tab contains restriction parameters for the software update server.

VEB_ON_VEA-SERV	XER. Properties (MITEL Conference Bridge) 🛛 🛛 🗙
Category Category 5700 Software Update	ABL Properties (MITEL Conference Bridge) X Impersonation Update FTP Update Parameters Update R(  Pesticitions  Ignore polected endports  End user confimation User confimation required N/M  Confimation guestion (leave blank for default application question)
	OK Cancel Assly Help

5720 VCB - Update Parameters Properties

In the Update Parameters Properties tab, the following properties appear:

#### Restrictions

Ignore selected	Refuse access to the selected endpoints.
enpoints	

#### End User Confirmation

User Confirmation Required	Select the type of user confirmation required.
Confirmation question	If needed, enter custom confirmation question.

Chapter 12 Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB

#### **Update Run Properties**

The **Update Run** tab contains information on when to perform the 5720 VCB software update.

VEB_ON_VEA-SER	VER Properties (MITEL Conference Bridge)
Category	Update FTP   Update Parameters   Update Run
2	Lipidate - Sicket often you want to run the activities update     Pointion     Soledule
٠.	Sdaed An white
Software Update	Form N.G. y N.G. z.
	10 N/A y N/A +
	UK Cancel Assay Help

5720 VCB - Update Run Properties

In the Update Run Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Upd	ate
-----	-----

|--|

**Schedule** Schedule the update for later.

Schedule Window

From	Select the start of the time period during which the update can be done.
<b>-</b> .	

**To** Select the end of the time period during which the update can be done.
## **5720 VCB Services Properties**

VCB Services define the usage of resources used during an ad-hoc videoconference.

The 5720 VCB's services are automatically listed in the 5700 VFA Administrator after installation of the 5720 VCB and restart of the computer. One directory number is created for each service type. At any time, you can add or edit service entries from the Main View.

#### ► To set the Properties for 5720 VCB Services

- 1. Double-click the VCB Service. The Properties dialog box for the 5720 VCB opens to the **General** tab.
- 2. Change properties according to your ad-hoc videoconferencing specifications, or keep the default settings (for descriptions of the properties, see the following subsections).
- 3. To implement the changes and proceed to another tab in the dialog box, click **Apply** and then the appropriate tab.
- 4. To implement all the changes and close the dialog box, click **OK**.

The following subsections describe the 5720 VCB Service properties.

Chapter 12 Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB

## **General Properties**

The General tab contains identity information of the new 5720 VCB Service.

VEB1 Properties (VEB Service)	×
General Adrhoc Conference Session Multicast I	005 1111
Directory Number: 1001 Description: MCB1	
Alan : [1001 Type: [E 164	-
See more addresses of the Additional Ds page	
Network Address: 10. 39. 15. 20	
OK Cancel Apply	Help

5720 VCB Service - General Properties

In the General Properties tab, the following properties appear:

Directory Number	Number to be dialed for using this service.
Description	Name of the service. This name will appear in the Main View after the login process is finished.
H.323 Address	
Alias	The service's alias.
Туре	The type of address used by the 5720 VCB for registering the service with the 5700 VFA.
Additional IDs page	Click this link to view any additional IDs that have been configured for this service.
Network Address	IP address of the 5720 VCB.

5720 VCB Service - Bandwidth Control Properties

## Ad-Hoc Conference Properties

A point-to-point conference becomes an ad-hoc conference when additional end points are "invited" by one of the parties and they join the session. The **Ad-hoc Conference** tab indicates that the selected VCB Service is exclusively used for use in ad-hoc conferences.

**NOTE** Because the 5720 VCB is intended for expansion to ad-hoc conferences, these options are selected automatically and may not be turned off.



5720 VCB Service - Ad-hoc Conference Properties

Use this service as an ad-hoc conference resource	This service is available for use when expanding to an ad-hoc videoconference.
Use this service exclusively for ad-hoc conferences	This service is available only for use in ad-hoc videoconferences, and unavailable for point-to-point sessions.
Ad-hoc Resources page	Click this link to open the 5700 VFA Ad-hoc Resources Properties, in which you can also select other 5720 VCB Services that may be used for ad-hoc videoconferences (see "Ad-hoc Resources" on page 5-13).

Chapter 12 Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB

## Session Properties

.. . .

. .

In the **Session** tab, define the video and audio formats for ad-hoc videoconferences managed by the 5720 VCB.

VEB1 Properties (VEB Service) X	
General Adrhoc Conference Settion Multicast QoS L.	
Switching Mode C Voice Activated Switching C Continuous Presence	
Video Fornat (H.251 -	
Size: CCF	
Audo Famat G.711 eLev	
Delsatz	
OK Cancel Assly, Help	

5720 VCB - Session Properties

Switching Mode	
Voice Switching	Parties see the video of the speaking person(s).
Continuous Presence	Several parties are heard and seen simultaneously.
Video	
Format	The video codec ( <b>H.261</b> , <b>H.263</b> ) used in the multipoint conference.
	Continuous Presence only supports H.261.
Size	The size of the transmitted video images:
	• <b>CIF</b> (Common Interchange Format), or normal size
	• QCIF (Quarter Size Common Interchange Format), or quarter size
	In Continuous Presense, the local side transmits QCIF video and receives CIF video.

Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB Chapter 12

Bandwidth	The bandwidth available for each party in the multipoint conference.
Audio	
Format	The audio codec and algorithm used in the multipoint conference.
	The 5720 VCB supports G.711.

Click Default to restore the system's default Session configuration.

## **Multicast Properties**

The Multicast tab lets your set multicast properties.

VEB1 Properties (VEB Service)
General Adhoc Conference Session Multicast Qo5 (**
Enable multicast for this resiston
Seation name
Senior descliptor.
Advanced
Erselcento addesic
Video refresiónates 🛛 📅 💼 recondo
Mede prokata TTL: 🖪 🛨 Pope
SUP wie. 🚺 🛨 seconda
SOPITU: 5 🚽 Nooi
Defaults
OK Cancel Apply Help

5720 VCB - Multicast Properties

Enable Multicast for this session	To enable/disable the multicast function for a session.
Session name	Enter the name for this multicast session.
Session description	Enter a description for this multicast sessino.

Broadcast to addressIP address of multicast session.Video refresh rateInterval between video refreshes.Media packets TTLSet media packets TTL.SDP rateSet SDP rate.SDP TTLSet SDP TTL.	Advanced	
Video refresh rateInterval between video refreshes.Media packets TTLSet media packets TTL.SDP rateSet SDP rate.SDP TTLSet SDP TTL.	Broadcast to address	IP address of multicast session.
Media packets TTLSet media packets TTL.SDP rateSet SDP rate.SDP TTLSet SDP TTL.	Video refresh rate	Interval between video refreshes.
SDP rateSet SDP rate.SDP TTLSet SDP TTL.	Media packets TTL	Set media packets TTL.
<b>SDP TTL</b> Set SDP TTL.	SDP rate	Set SDP rate.
	SDP TTL	Set SDP TTL.

## **QoS Properties**

The QoS tab contains settings for the 5720 VCB quality of service.

VLB1 Properties (VCB Service)
General Adhoc Conference Session Multicast Qo5
Pricety Type (Qo5)
C No Pricely (QoS)
@ Phecedence
C Difforry
Pricely values
Video Priołty:
4 - Flash Oversite
Audio Pricely:
S - CRUTIC / ECP
RTOP Pricely:
6 - Internetwork Control
Restore QoS Delauto
Laurence and the second
OK Cancel Assly Help

5720 VCB - Update Parameters Properties

#### **Bandwidth Control Properties**

In the **Bandwidth Control** tab, select **Allow calls with Non-registered Devices** to allow non-registered devices to participate in any multipoint videoconferences using this service. You can also set the maximum number of simultaneous callers by selecting **Limit number of concurrent calls** to and choosing the maximum allowed number of calls.



#### LDAP Properties

The **LDAP** tab provides information about the 5720 VCB service's registration, if applicable, in an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server. For information about nodes' LDAP Properties, see "LDAP Properties" on page 6-14.

**NOTE** When the 5700 is connected to a 3300 ICP (Voice First Mode), you do not need to program these settings (the 5700 VFA uses the LDAP settings of the 3300 ICP).

#### Additional ID Properties

In addition to its directory (E.164) number, a 5720 VCB service may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 Alias. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable. For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

#### Chapter 12 Setting Up Ad-hoc Videoconferences Managed by a 5720 VCB

## 12.2 Expanding to an Ad-hoc Videoconference

To expand from a point-to-point videoconference to an ad-hoc videoconference, one of the parties must invite the additional parties. This procedure depends on the party's videoconferencing application:

MeetingPoint 4.6, 5760 VCA	Use the <b>Invite</b> command. For further instructions, refer to the 5700 VFA End Point's Guide, 5760 VCA User's Guide or the VCON MeetingPoint 4.6 User's Guide.
Other applications	Enter the defined Ad-hoc Conference code (default is *77) followed by the directory number of the additional party. For example, to invite end point 2345, enter *772345.

## 13 CUSTOMIZING THE 5700 VFA **ADMINISTRATOR**

In the 5700 VFA Administrator application, you may customize the application according to your personal preferences. A set of defined window, table, and layout properties for the Administrator application is called a *workspace*. This chapter explains the following customization tasks:

- Defining the Main View Options
- Setting Up the Workspace
- Customizing the Toolbar •
- Customizing the Status Views •

#### 13.1 **Defining the Main View Options**

You can customize the following elements of the Main View through the Options dialog box.

Tree Styles - the appearance of the table format of the Main View.

Item Attributes - the appearance (font, color, and so on.) of the various objects, such as end points and login requests.

## **Tree Styles**

The Tree Styles Options control the appearance of tables in the main Administrator application window.



► To set Main View table properties

- In the View menu, click Options. The Options dialog box appears with 1. the Tree Styles tab open.
- Change the appropriate properties. For descriptions of these properties, 2. see "Tree Styles Properties" on page 13-2.
- Click **OK** to complete the change. If you want to discard the change, click 3. Cancel

Options	x
Main View   Workspaces	
Ties Styles   Rest-Actibutes	
F Show lines between Jeras	Enable word visap
R. Show lines between columns	R Highlight entire nov
P Show column headers	T Display large mages
Anexalized expand/collepse	
Enable Annuation	++++++
OK Cano	A Restrict Holps

Tree Styles Options

## **Tree Styles Properties**

Set the Tree Styles properties according to your viewing preferences.

Enable Word Wrap	Select this option to cause text in each column to continue automatically on the next line, after it reaches the end of each line. The line width is determined by the column borders.		
	If this option is not selected, sections of long phrases or names, that are not within the column borders, are not seen. However, a tooltip appears over those names.		
Show Column Headers	Select this option to display the column names that identify the information that appears in the Main View.		

	-		
Video Contevencing Item	Number/Address	Connection State	-

Main View Column Headers

Show Lines Between Columns	Select this option to display the vertical borders between columns of the Main View.
Show Lines Between Items	Select this option to display the horizontal borders between items.

Highlight Entire Row	Select this option to highlight the entire row when you select an item. In this case, you can click anywhere on the row.	
	Deselect this option to highlight only the item name when you select it. In this case, you must click the name to highlight it.	
Display Large Images	Select this option to view the workspace's details and images at a larger size.	
Animated Expand/ Collapse	Select this option to expand and collapse the levels of the System tree in a graded, stuttering motion. To control the speed, drag the speed slider towards the left for faster motion or towards the right for slower motion.	
	Deselect this option to expand and collapse the levels in one swift motion.	

## **Item Attributes**

In the **Item Attributes** tab, you can customize the way entries are indicated in the Main View. For example, you can change the color of the characters in order to differentiate between Mitel Networks end points, MCUs, hunting groups and so on. Also, you can assign sounds to indicate occurrences such as login requests.

To use the factory-set indication styles, do not make any changes. Keep Use **Default Attributes** selected for all entries.

To customize the indications for entries in the Main View

- 1. In the View menu, click Options. Click the Item Attributes tab.
- 2. From the Item list, select the entry type you want to customize.
- 3. Deselect Use Default Attributes.

4. Customize items, according to your own specifications, as follows:

Font Style

Color	Click and choose another color from the palette. If you want, you can also create colors that don't appear on the original palette.
Inverse Background Color	Select to add a highlight background to the item in the Main View.
Bold	Select to display the item name in bold letters in the Main View.
Play Sound	If you want, associate a sound with the item. Click this button to browse and locate Wave ( <i>wav</i> ) files. For example, you can find login request indication files in the <i>\\Vcon\Administrator</i> folder. Otherwise, you can use a <i>wav</i> file from another source.

## 5. Click OK.

Main Verse   Workspreces	
Ties Skyles Rest-Mailbules	
her 🕱 \$700 💌 🗖	Use Default Atabules
Ford Sigle	
F Invense Background Calor P Bold	
PleySound	
OK Cancel	Azaly Help

Main View Item Attributes

## 13.2 Setting Up the Workspace

Several options are available for customizing the 5700 VFA Administrator's workspaces in accordance with your operating preferences.

## **Defining Workspace Options**

The Options dialog box **Workspaces** tab contains options for storing the data and appearance that are associated with a specific Workspace.

#### To define Workspace options

- 1. In the View menu, click **Options**. The Options dialog box opens to the **Workspaces** tab.
- 2. Change the appropriate properties. For descriptions of the properties, see "Workspace Properties" on page 13-5.
- 3. Click **OK** to complete the change. If you want to discard the change, click **Cancel**.

#### Workspace Properties

Set Workspace properties as follows:

Save the active workspace when exiting	Select this option to automatically save all the current Workspace properties whenever you close the Workspace or the Administrator application.		
Reload the last used workspace when starting	Select this option to open the previously used Workspace whenever you start the Administrator application.		
Workspace Persistence	Persistence information includes the customization properties defined for the workspace and the data about devices and other nodes that are defined within that workspace.		
		Select <b>Save Persistence Information to a file</b> to store all of the current workspace's data in a file located in the Administrator application's root directory (Default is <i>C:\Program Files\Mitel\Admin</i> ).	
		Select <b>Save Persistence Information to the</b> <b>registry</b> to store all of the current workspace's data in the system Registry	

Maximum inactive time for change level login For administrators with "Change" privileges, this is the maximum amount of time that the 5700 VFA administrator remains idle. When this interval passes, a message asks you to disconnect or stay connected. If you do not respond, the administrator disconnects from the system.



Workspace Options

## **Managing Workspaces**

The 5700 VFA Administrator application provides functions for managing and storing workspaces. These functions include:

- Saving a workspace
- Renaming a workspace
- Deleting a workspace
- Opening a workspace
- Reorganizing the Workspace list.

#### Saving a Workspace

A workspace may be saved in different formats:

- As a file this is advantageous if you may log in to the 5700 VFA and use the same workspace from other computers.
- As information stored in the system registry this is advantageous if more than one administrator may log in to the 5700 VFA from the same computer.

#### To save a workspace as a file

- **NOTE** In order to save workspaces as files, the **Save persistence information to a file** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.
  - 1. In the **File** menu, point to **Workspaces** and click **Save Workspace Now**. The Save Workspace dialog box appears.
  - 2. To create a new workspace file, type the name in the **File Name** box and click **Save**. The system automatically adds a *.paw* extension to the filename.

-or-

To update a previous workspace file, double-click the name of the file from the list. Then, click **Yes** to confirm.

To save a workspace in the system registry

- **NOTE** In order to save workspaces in the registry, the **Save persistence information to the registry** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.
  - 1. In the **File** menu, point to **Workspaces** and click **Save Workspace As**. The Save Workspace dialog box appears.



2. Click the New (Insert) button.

- 3. Type the name of the new workspace.
- 4. Click in the free space of the dialog box. A confirmation request appears.
- 5. Click **Yes** to save the new workspace.



Saving a Workspace to the Registry

#### **Renaming a Workspace**

The procedure for renaming a workspace depends on whether you save workspaces to files or to the registry.

#### To rename a workspace file

- **NOTE** In order to rename a workspace file, the **Save persistence information to a file** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.
  - 1. In the **File** menu, point to **Workspaces** and click **Open Workspace**. The Open Workspace dialog box appears.
  - 2. Click the workspace file that you want to rename. After 1 second, click again. The filename is highlighted for editing.
  - 3. Type the new name and then click outside the new name area. The workspace file is now renamed.

#### To rename a workspace that is stored in the registry

- **NOTE** In order to rename a workspace in the registry, the **Save persistence information in the registry** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.
  - 1. In the File menu, point to Workspaces and click Open Workspace. The

Open Workspace dialog box appears.

- 2. Double-click the workspace that you want to rename. The name is highlighted for editing.
- 3. Type the new name and then click below the list.
- 4. Click **Done** to exit the dialog box.

#### **Opening a Workspace**

The procedure for opening a workspace depends on whether you save workspaces to files or to the registry.

#### To open a workspace file

**NOTE** In order to open a workspace file, the **Save persistence information to a file** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.

- 1. In the **File** menu, point to **Workspaces** and click **Open Workspace**. The Open Workspace dialog box appears.
- 2. Double-click the file that you want to open. The Login To [5700 VFA name] dialog box appears.
- 3. Type the required password and then click **Login**. The workspace opens in the Administration window.

To open a workspace from the registry

- **NOTE** In order to open a workspace from the registry, the **Save persistence information in the registry** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.
  - 1. In the **File** menu, point to **Workspaces** and click **Open Workspace**. The Open Workspace dialog box appears.
  - 2. Click the workspace that you want to open and then click **Open**. The Login To [*VFA name*] dialog box appears.
  - 3. Type the required password and then click **Login**. The workspace opens in the Administration window.

#### **Deleting a Workspace**

The procedure for deleting a workspace depends on whether you save workspaces to files or to the registry.

#### To delete a workspace file

- **NOTE** In order to delete a workspace file, the **Save persistence information to a file** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.
  - 1. In the **File** menu, point to **Workspaces** and click **Open Workspace**. The Open Workspace dialog box appears.
  - 2. Right-click the workspace file that you want to delete and then click **Delete**. Click **Yes** to confirm.

The workspace file is deleted from the system.

- To delete a workspace from the registry
- **NOTE** In order to delete a workspace from the registry, the **Save persistence information in the registry** option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.
  - 1. In the **File** menu, point to **Workspaces** and click **Open Workspace**. The Open Workspace dialog box appears.
- $\mathbf{x}$
- 2. Click the workspace that you want to delete and then click the **Delete** button.

The workspace is deleted from the system. No confirmation is requested.

3. Click **Done** to exit the dialog box.

#### **Reorganizing the Workspace List**

If your workspaces are stored in the registry, you can control the order in which they appear in the Open Workspace dialog box. By default, a new workspace appears at the top of the list. However, if you prefer to organize them according to specific preference, such as A-Z or company departments, the Workspace list provides this ability.

#### ► To reorganize the Workspace list

**NOTE** In order to rearrange the Workspace list, the **Save persistence** information in the registry option of the Options dialog box must be selected. For more details, see "Defining Workspace Options" on page 13-5.

- 1 In the File menu, point to Workspaces and click Open Workspace. The Open Workspace dialog box appears.
- 2. Click a workspace whose position in the list you want to change.
- 3. Click the Up or **Down** button as many times as necessary until the

workspace is in the required location.



- 4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as many times as necessary.
- 5. Click **Done** to exit the dialog box.

## 13.3 Customizing the Toolbar

You can set the appearance and the buttons of the toolbars according to your preferences.

## **Defining the Toolbar Display**

By default, the toolbars are docked in the Administrator window below the menu bar. You can choose any or all toolbars to be part of the application display. In addition, you can select among a number of other appearance options.

#### **>** To define the toolbar display

- 1. In the View menu, click Customize. The Customize dialog box opens to the Toolbars tab.
- 2. To display a particular toolbar on the screen, select it in the **Toolbars** list. To hide a toolbar, deselect it.
- 3. Set the toolbar display properties according to your preferences. The toolbar display changes as you change each setting. For a description of these properties, see "Toolbar Display Properties" on page 13-13.

To return a toolbar to its default formation, select it in the **Toolbars** list and then click **Reset**.

- 4. Click **OK** to complete the change. If you want to discard the change, click **Cancel**.
- **NOTE** If you want to change the buttons on the toolbars, click **Apply** to implement the toolbar display property changes. Then, click the **Commands** tab.

Toober: VI 40 VI 5700 V Noder Help VEdr V Gen Full Screen	부 Show Tooliga 부 Cool Look 두 Lage Buttoni	New . Pieset
Torto care Pie	_	

Customizing Toolbar Display Properties

## **Toolbar Display Properties**

Set toolbar display properties as follows:

Toolbars	In this list, select any or all of the various toolbars that will appear in the Administrator application window. Only toolbars that are marked with a $\checkmark$ will appear.
Show Tooltips	Select this option to display tool tips when you hold the pointer over a button for about 1 second.
Cool Look	Select this option to cause each button to display a raised effect when the pointer points it.
	When deselected, the buttons are static with clear borders.
Large Buttons	Select this option to increase the size of the buttons by $400\%$ (4x).

## Adding and Removing Toolbar Buttons

You can control the contents of each toolbar by adding or removing buttons, or moving buttons among the various toolbars.



#### To control the contents of the various toolbars

- In the View menu, click Customize. The Customize dialog box opens to 1 the Toolbars tab.
- 2. Click the **Commands** tab.
- 3. To add a button to any toolbar, select a category from the **Categories** list. Drag the appropriate button to any toolbar in the Administrator window that you want.

To remove a button from any toolbar, drag the button to the Customize dialog box.

To move a button to another toolbar, drag the button to the new location.



Customizing Toolbar Button Contents

## **Creating a Custom Toolbar**

You can add a toolbar other than the standard ones provided by the Administrator application.



#### ► To add a custom toolbar

- In the View menu, click Customize. The Customize dialog box opens to 1. the Toolbars tab.
- 2. Click New. The New Toolbar dialog box appears.





- Type the name of the new toolbar and click **OK**. The new toolbar appears 3. in the Administrator window and its name appears in the Toolbars list.
- Click the **Commands** tab. 4.
- 5. Switching Categories according to your preference, drag any number of toolbars to the new toolbar.
- Click **OK** to close the dialog box. 6.

#### **Customizing the Status Views** 13.4

According to your preferences, you can customize the way that the Administrator displays information in the various status view tables. Design functions are available for



Displaying the various views



Style formats for table elements or types of information.

Style formats for printed tables.

## Setting Table On-Screen Display Properties

This section provides instructions for customizing the on-screen display of the Administrator application's various table views. You can control the appearance of table elements such as gridlines and column heads, colors, and current cell.

**NOTE** The display properties affect only the active table view. To set the display properties of another specific table, you must enter that particular view.

#### To set table on-screen display properties

1 In the View toolbar, click the table view that you want to format.



View Command Buttons

- 2. In the View menu, click Display Properties. The Display Settings dialog box appears.
- 3. Set the display properties according to your preferences. For a description of these properties, see "Table Display Settings" on page 13-17.

In the **Preview** area of the dialog box, you can preview the effects of your changes.

4 Click **OK** to implement the settings.

## Customizing the 5700 VFA Administrator Chapter 13

var avg Proriset	Preview
P (D-Butani	A B C
T Vertical Lines	2 world
🕫 Horizonial Lines	4
Mail Current Bow	6
Mark Current Eglunn	1 <u>1</u>
ala	User Properties
Sed Lines 📃 📃 📃	Multiste Value
Dead Lines	Carriers Line Privert Thm.
Tacking Line	
Teed Lines Flocking Line Nagging Line Jackground	
Tecking Line Nagging Line Rackground	

Table Display Settings

## **Table Display Settings**

Set the table display properties as follows:

Titles and Gridlines	Select <b>3D Buttons</b> to display column and row titles inside borders.
	Select <b>Vertical Lines</b> to display borders between columns.
	Select <b>Horizontal Lines</b> to display borders between rows.
	Select Mark Current Row and/or Mark Current Column to provide a 3-D pressed appearance to the selected row/column heading.

Color	Click any item in the Color list and then click the required color from the adjacent palette.		
	Grid lines are the borders between columns and rows.		
		<b>Fixed lines</b> are rows that are in a specific location permanently. They cannot be sorted.	
		<b>Tracking Line</b> is the border that is being dragged during a Resize Column/Row action.	
		<b>Dragging Line</b> is the row or column that is being dragged to another location.	
		<b>Background</b> represents the empty area behind and around the table.	
User Properties	In t app	the <b>Value</b> list, select the option that determines the bearance of the adjacent <b>Attribute</b> .	

## Style Formats for Table Elements or Types of Information

You can customize the display styles of various table elements, such as column headers and standard cells. For example, you can change the font style and colors of particular information that must be quickly recognizable.

**NOTE** The style formats affect only the active table view. To set the style formats of another specific table, you must enter that particular view.

#### > To change the formatting of a table element

1. In the View toolbar, click the table view that you want to format.

ह्य 🛄 🔛 🛄 🖾

- 2. In the Format menu, click Styles. The Styles dialog box appears.
- 3. In the **Names** list, click the element that you want to format and then click **Change**.

A style formatting dialog box appears for the selected element. By default, the **Font** tab is open.

- 4. Set the style properties according to your preferences. For a description of these properties, see "Style Format Properties" on page 13-20.
- 5. Click **OK** to complete the change. If you want to discard the change, click **Cancel**.



Table Element Styles Dialog Box

#### **Style Format Properties**

The following categories make up a table element style:

- Font
- Color
- Borders
- Align

## Font Properties

For the table's text, you can select the font, its size, and any special characteristics such as **Bold** or **Underlined**.

Column Header Font Color Borders Align	×	
Font Te Arial Te Arial Black Te Conic Sare MS Effects F <sup>2</sup> Stakeout F	Outline: Size: Bold 10 = 10 = 11 = 11 = 11 = 11 = 11 = 11	
Testcolar Default	AaBbCcXxYyZz	
OK Cancel Acely		

Font Properties

## **Color Properties**

In the style changing dialog box, click the Color tab.

To change the color of the table element, click a color in the **Foreground** group.

□ To change 3-D effect (such as raised, pressed, or normal flat) of the table element, select one of the options in the **3-D Effect** group.

#### Customizing the 5700 VFA Administrator Chapter 13

Faregoard	Backgound
3D Ellect	Preview
C Normal C Inset	
C Raised C Default	
	2

Color Properties

#### **Borders Properties**

- 1. In the style changing dialog box, click the **Borders** tab.
- 2. In the **Border** group, select the side(s) of the cells that you want to change.
- 3. In the **Type** group, select a type of line and/or thickness. If necessary, select a different color from the **Color** list.

Column Header	×
Font Color Borden Align	
Barder Flerope Let. Right Top Bottom Color	
OK Cancel	Apply

**Borders** Properties

#### Align Properties

To change Align properties of the selected table element, click the Align tab in the style changing dialog box.

□ In the **Horizontal** group, select left, center or right text alignment in the cells.

□ In the Vertical group, select top, center, or bottom text alignment in the cells.

Select Wrap Text to display cell text on a new line if the text exceeds the cell's borders.

□ Select **Auto Size** to set the size of the columns automatically according to the column's content.

Column Header Font   Color   Borden   A	égn	×
Hoizontal C Standard C Left aligned C Center C Right aligned W top Text Mov Enter	Vertical C Standard C Top C Center C Botton	
	OK Cancel	ð ggly

Align Properties

## A MEETINGPOINT END POINT PROPERTIES

From the 5700 VFA Administrator application, the administrator may view and control various properties of MeetingPoint 4.5 (and higher) end points. MeetingPoint is the videoconferencing application used by Mitel Networks 5750 DVA and by VCON's Escort, Cruiser, and MediaConnect 8000.

**NOTE** Running MeetingPoint disables the computer's screensaver.

## A.1 Conversation Properties

The Conversation Properties dialog box may be used for viewing and controlling the Video and Data settings of MeetingPoint end points.

## Video

You may control certain video features that improve the quality of the video transmission from the selected MeetingPoint end point.



MeetingPoint End Point - Video Properties

#### Video Window

Always on Top	Select to keep the Video windows and their subapplications (such as Camera Controller) always on top of all open windows, even if another application is selected. When this command is not selected, a selected application may hide the Video windows.
Display	
Clearer Picture/ Smoother Motion	This control enables you to define the relationship between clear, sharp images and smooth uninterrupted motion during the video transmission. If the picture is clearer, the motion may be slower and more broken. If the motion is smoother, the picture may be less clear.
	Drag the slider until you are satisfied with the image sharpness and the smoothness of motion. There are 30 possible settings on the slider $-1$ represents the clearest picture but the most uneven motion; <b>30</b> represents the smoothest motion but the most blurry picture.

#### Video Format

The type of video format in which the current video meeting is broadcast. This setting affects the viewing quality for the remote party, and may only be changed during a call. The possible options are:

Normal (CIF)	Common Interchange Format (CIF) provides a higher resolution at a lower frame rate. Usually, CIF provides better overall video quality, especially when a higher transmission bandwidth, such as 2 x BRI (at least 128 kbps) is available.
Quarter Size (QCIF)	Quarter Size Common Interchange Format (QCIF) may be chosen if the remote party has a system that does not support CIF format, or if the bandwidth is low.

## Display Mode

This setting is applicable if the end point is a MediaConnect 8000 system. The display mode determines how local video, remote video and software applications (such as MeetingPoint) are displayed at this end point.

Single Monitor	Video and applications on the SVGA monitor only.
Dual Monitor	Video on the TV monitor, applications on the SVGA monitor.
Triple Monitor	Local video on one TV monitor, remote video on the second TV monitor, and applications on the SVGA monitor.
Attributes	
Use H.261 for ISDN when possible	Select if you are sure of gaining a connection at a higher bitrate—for example, if you are dialing 3 or more ISDN channels.
	The default codec recommendation is H.263, which includes techniques for improved video performance over low bitrates.

## Data

The **Data** tab provides several options for preparing to share data during videoconferences.

David Schot Pro	pesties (5750)	X
Calegory	Video Data	
a B	Data Applications F Use MeetingPoint Data Applications Data Applications	
Enveration	File Transfee Detail Desctop: [CWMMDOWS1Application Date/Ferceived Files	
2	Application Shaling	
Une Date	Sating	
÷.	CK Cancel 1	Help

MeetingPoint End Point - Data Properties

#### Data Applications

Use MeetingPoint Data Applications	Select if you want the selected user to use MeetingPoint's standard data sharing features. Selecting this option can save you time and computer memory.
Use NetMeeting Data Application	Select if you want the selected user to use the full Microsoft NetMeeting data sharing application.

If you change the data sharing method, the change only takes effect after the end point exits and start MeetingPoint again.

# **NOTE** It is recommended to select a common data sharing method for all logged-in users.

File Transfer

Default	This box shows the path of the folder that receives files
Directory	transferred to the selected computer during a video
	meeting.

Application Sharing

Auto Collaborate	Select to automatically enable a remote party to work (instead of observing passively), together with the selected user, in a shared application.
Setting	
Enable Full Data Bandwidth	This feature permits temporary increases in bandwidth during a video meeting. This speeds up the transfer of large amounts of data. The system temporarily uses the bandwidth allocated for video transmission for the transfer of data. This results in the prevention of video transmission until data transfer is complete.
Always use Data in Interactive Multicast Sessions	Select to open a data connection automatically whenever the selected user initiates an Interactive Multicast video meeting as the chair.

Appendix A MeetingPoint End Point Properties

## A.2 Calls Properties

The Calls Properties dialog box may be used for viewing and controlling incoming call and multicast (if applicable) properties of MeetingPoint end points.

## **Incoming Calls**

In the **Incoming Calls** tab, customize how the MeetingPoint end point indicates and accepts incoming calls.

David Solver Pro	perfers (\$750)	×
Calmpon Strill Carmenadan	Incoming Calls   Ranging   3id Party-Versee   Interactive Maticant When alle T Reportment As Men active Multicant Dran F Manually part P part to part calls F Auto print of part to part calls F Auto print of all incoming calls	
Dire Data Record	CK Carson Help	

MeetingPoint End Point - Incoming Calls Properties

#### When Idle

Auto answer Select to enable the selected user to automatically accept all calls when its system is not in a video meeting.

#### As Interactive Multicast Chair

If the end point supports VCON's Interactive Multicast, it may sometimes be the Chair of multicast video meetings. If another party calls it while it chairs a meeting, that call may be accepted or rejected according to the selected option:

**Manually join IP** Select to enable the selected user to either join or reject callers to an ongoing Multicast meeting. calls
	MeetingPoint End Point Properties Appendix		
Auto join IP point-to-point calls	Select to enable the selected user to automatically join callers to an ongoing Multicast meeting.		
Auto reject all incoming calls	Select to enable the selected user to automatically reject incoming calls to an ongoing Multicast meeting.		

# Ringing

You can define the method to notify the selected user that a call is coming in or going out.

happy 1 Propertie	es (5750) 🗙
Calegory	Incoming Calls Ringing and Party Viewer Interactive Mullicast
2	Pinging Settings ← No Sound ← Internal Speaker
Convettueion	Incoming Ring
2	Outgoing Ring Ringest way
Ueer Data	
Nabozi:	OK Cancel Assly Help

MeetingPoint End Point - Ringing Properties

**Ringing Settings** 

No Sound	Select to receive calls and to call out with no accompanying ringing sound.
Internal Speaker	Select if you want the ringing to originate from the computer's standard speaker.

External Speakers	Select if you want the ringing to originate from connected external speakers.	
Incoming Ring/ Outgoing Ring	If the end point is using external speakers, ringing sounds other than the defaults may be used. If applicable, the appropriate filenames appear in these boxes.	

## **3rd Party Viewer**

**NOTE** This tab is only available for end points with the Interactive Multicast option.

The Calls Properties **3rd Party Viewer** tab contains options for transmission of an Interactive Multicast video meeting through third-party viewers.

Calegory	Incoming Cafe   Ranging Bid Party Venime   Interactive Multicant
B	Satings Announcement (requercy 🚺 🚔 carutes.
Levender	3id Paty Viewer Forsat ∑ideo broadcast fremat Audio broadcast fremat Video Ficheoh ∑imeout 0 ∰ Seconds
Colle Colle Univ Data	
÷.	OK Cancel Help

MeetingPoint End Point - 3rd Party Viewer Properties

#### Settings

Announcement In this list, click the number of minutes as an interval between announcements of the Multicast video meeting in the third-party viewer's schedule. Persons subscribing to the third-party viewer can see the announcement when they are online.

### 3rd Party Viewer Format

The default third-party viewer settings are recommended for most Multicast broadcasting conditions. Change them ONLY if the remote systems' specifications differ from the default values.

Video Broadcast Format	In this list, click a format that all parties in the meeting are capable of using. In this box, click the audio standard that all parties in the meeting are capable of using.		
Audio Broadcast Format			
NOTE For third- are used i Interacti	party-compatible video meetings, the above settings nstead of the Broadcast Format settings in the <b>ve Multicast</b> tab.		
Video Refresh Timeout	In this list, click the maximum number of seconds required until the video broadcast is synchronized for all viewers.		
Restore Defaults	Click this button to return to the original preset third-party viewer settings.		

## **Interactive Multicast**

**NOTE** This tab is only available for end points with the Interactive Multicast option.

In the Call Properties **Interactive Multicast** tab, define the default configuration for Interactive Multicast video meetings.

happy 1 Propertie	es (5750)
Category	Incoming Calls Ringing 3rd Party Viewer Interactive Multicast
*275*	Semion's Pacaward
	Configure bandwidth rate in the Bandwidth Control page.
	Video format: H261 Y Audio format: 6728 Y
	Broadcast to IP address: 239.39.15.58
Convettation	Video port: 36100
20	Video control port 36101
1	Audio port 16100
	Audio control port 18101
<u></u>	fine to Live (TTL): 5 🛨
Uver Data	water become and a los 20
T	OK Cancel Assily Help

MeetingPoint End Point - Interactive Multicast Properties

#### Broadcast

The default Broadcast settings are recommended for most Multicast broadcasting conditions. Change them ONLY if your network's specifications require different settings (for example, if your organization has a firewall).

Session's Password	If you want to restrict entry into the Interactive Multicast video meetings that the end point initiates, define a security password. In this box, type the characters that make up the password.	
	If you want to allow anyone who calls the end point to join the multicast meeting, leave this box blank.	
Video Format	In this box, click the video coding standard that all parties in the meeting are capable of using.	

	MeetingPoint End Point Properties Appendix A	
Audio Format	In this box, click the audio standard that all parties in the meeting are capable of using.	
Broadcast to IP Address	In this box, type the destination IP address for an Interactive Multicast video meeting (do not enter leading zeroes). All participants in the session transmit and receive from this common IP address. This address must be a class D address in the range of <b>224.0.0.0</b> to <b>239.255.255.255</b> .	
Video Port	In this box, type the ID of the port used for the video connection.	
Video Control Port	In this box, type the ID of the port used for transferring control and synchronization information about the video transmission.	
Audio Port	In this box, type the ID of the port used for the audio connection.	
Audio Control Port	In this box, type the ID of the port used for transferring control and synchronization information about the audio transmission.	
Time to Live (TTL)	In this list, click the maximum number of routers that the packets sent from your system may pass through.	
Audio Packet Size	In the box, enter the number of bits that make up a packet carrying audio.	

# A.3 User Data Properties

The End Point User Data property dialog boxes may be used for viewing and entering identification, business and location information about the selected user. This information is optional and does not affect the functioning of the 5700 VFA and the communication within its network.

David Schot Prop	enties (5750)	and the second	×
Calegory	Several Local	ion]	
°0°	Nickrone	David	-
1200	Lectrone	Saha	
6	Entrane	David	1
Corvenation	Çimpanyı.	Vean	
-	Etoilion	Tean Leader	1
<b>A</b>	Department:	Techpido	
-	Ngler:		
User Data	Picture Net	1	=
Hetron D	OK	Circel dzelv	Help

MeetingPoint End Point - General User Properties

David Schot Pro	perties (5750)		×
Calegory	Several Location		
100	Vaca1 J	Eax [	-
• •	Voice 2	Enger	1
	Hobile	£ real	
	77.mm	1000 00 0000000	- 8
Convenation	Addwss	Mailing Address	
20	Addesse	Addens	- 8
1	De	Og F	
-	Quite:	State	
2	20	Zp	
Unicos	Caurton	Cogray	
		aller and	
	OK Ca	not la	Help
North States of Street, or other	1 T 7 2		

MeetingPoint End Point - Location Properties

# A.4 Communication Properties

The Communication Properties dialog box may be used for viewing and controlling various LAN settings of MeetingPoint end points.

# LAN

This tab contains configuration information for holding video meetings over the connected LAN.



MeetingPoint End Point - LAN Properties

IP Address	The selected end point's IP address.		
DNS Name	The selected computer's name ( <i>DNS</i> stands for Domain Naming System, which enables computers on a network to be referred to by name in addition to IP Addresses).		
Go toGeneral and Bandwidth control pages for more settings	Click to display the selected user's 5700 VFA General or Bandwidth Properties (see "General Properties" on page 6-3 and "Bandwidth Control Properties" on page 6-7).		
Allow Adaptive Bandwidth Adjustment	Select this option to enable reduction of the alloted bandwidth if the network is congested.		

## Appendix A MeetingPoint End Point Properties

Enable Lip Synchronization Mechanization	Select this option to enable adjustment of the video and the audio if they are out of sync with each other (see the <i>MeetingPoint 4.5 User Guide</i> , Appendix B, "Monitoring the Conversation State").
Automatic Buffering Control	□ Select this option to enable the system to automatically control the amount of buffering required to maintain the consistency of the video and audio transmission. For example, if video packets are delayed for 1 or 2 seconds, the system will automatically synchronize the transmission so that the delay does not disturb the visible video.
	Deselect this option only if the automatic buffering is not sufficient — for example, if the quality of the video meeting is poor or there is a noticeable delay.
Do not show Network Congestion dialog box	Select this option if you do not want to notify the selected end point when its calls are transmitted at a lower bandwidth because of network congestion.
Enable NAT	If your organization uses NAT (Network Address Translation) when communicating with parties in another LAN or WAN, type the external address for the selected user.
	NAT helps protect a LAN from exposure to unwanted traffic by providing one single external address to remote users. NAT uses a system of local and external addresses to hide a LAN's users from other networks. A NAT server translates local parties' addresses to an external address, which is then used to identify the local party to remote parties. Therefore, remote parties use this external address to call the local party, without knowing its actual local address.
	This feature is applicable only to MeetingPoint 4.6 end points.

## Connection

In the Communication list, select the type of external communication line (LAN or ISDN) the selected system will use. Selecting None enables the end point to videoconference only on the connected LAN.

This dialog box is applicable only to VCON Cruisers and MediaConnect 8000s that are set up for ISDN connection.



MeetingPoint End Point - Connection Properties

## Firewall

This tab contains configuration information on your firewall.



MeetingPoint End Point - Firewall Properties

## Login

Use this tab to change the user password.



MeetingPoint End Point - Login Properties

# A.5 Telephony Properties

The Telephony Properties dialog box may be used for viewing and controlling various ISDN settings.

These properties are only applicable to VCON Cruisers and MediaConnect 8000s that are set up for ISDN connection.

## **Phone Numbers**

The Phone Numbers tab lists the end point's ISDN phone numbers, if applicable.

allegery .	Phone Numbers   System Type   MSN   Sub-Addressing   Die
2	Nymber of ISEN lines to be used
	Phone Numbers
daar Chata	#1 (seasaaa #2 (asaasaa
	12   III   IIII   III   IIII   III   III
-	45 [ 45 ]
B	
	OK Cancel Institute Help

MeetingPoint End Point - Phone Numbers Properties

Number of ISDN Lines to be Used	The number of ISDN lines the selected system uses. The number of available lines depends on the number of BRIs (Basic Rate Interface) on the videoconferencing card. Each BRI supports up to two phone lines of 64 kbps each (56 kbps in Restricted networks):	
	Cruiser 150 - Up to <b>2</b> ISDN lines (1 BRI)	
	Cruiser 384/MediaConnect 8000 - Up to 6 ISDN lines (3 BRI)	
Phone Numbers	The ISDN numbers of each line. Do not include your own country's international code or your local area code.	

## Switch Type

The Switch Type tab contains information about the ISDN switch type used by the selected end point.

Charlie Brown Pro	perties (Cruiner)	×
Calegory	Phone Numbers Switch Type MSN   Se	Ar-Addressing   Dialing
Conversation	Yout Location	
٨	Switch Type Developments	
	F Check fist has Fyou have gesticated	SIK access
Intrast Telepton	OK Cancel da	celu Hulp

MeetingPoint End Point - Switch Type Properties

Your Location	The country in which the selected user is located.
Switch Type	If applicable, the most common switch type for the user's country appears automatically. If a different switch type is being used (according to your ISDN carrier), select it from the list.
Check this Box if you Have Restricted 56K Access	In some areas (such as the United States, Canada, Korea and Japan), the main ISDN network is Restricted (data rate of 56K). If applicable to the selected user, select this option.

## **SPID Numbers**

If the selected ISDN Switch Type supports Service Profile Identifiers (SPID), the **SPID Numbers** tab lists them for the ISDN lines. A SPID number relates to the capabilities of the end point on the ISDN line. This information may be obtained from the end point's ISDN carrier.

Charlie Brown Pa	operties (Cruises)	×
Calegory	Phone Numbers SPID Numbers Switch Type   MSN	154.1.1
Ø	Number of SPIDs. 2	
6	SPID Number	
Conveniation	5PID 2 42	_
2	SPID 3 5PID 4	
Liter Data	5PD 5 5PD 6 5	-
Entrant I	OK. Carcel Apple	Heb

MeetingPoint End Point - SPID Properties

Number of SPIDs	Select the number of SPID numbers that were specified by your ISDN carrier.
SPID Numbers	Type the SPID numbers as your ISDN carrier specifies.
1,2,3,4,5,6	If your ISDN provider gave the selected end point only
	one SPID number, enter it in <b>SPID 1</b> .

## MSN

The **MSN** tab is relevant if the connected ISDN network supports Multiple Subscriber Numbering (MSN).

Charlie Brown Po	operties (Cruiser)		2
Culugory	Phone Numbers   Switch	Type MSN Sub-Address	ng   Dialing
Convestation	HSN Addmin		
<u> </u>	41	#5	
Call	42	42	_
2	42	18	
Com Diela	#j [	#2	_
1	-	810	-
Terrort			
Taketon .	0K C	arcei <u>datek</u>	Heb

MeetingPoint End Point - MSN Properties

Select **MSN Support** to use MSN capabilities. In the MSN Address boxes, type the exact MSN numbers for the end point.

## Subaddressing

Subaddressing is applicable if the selected system shares an ISDN BRI line with other equipment (such as other computers, fax machines, standard telephones, and so on). In such a case, the computer has an additional series of numbers and/or letters added to the end of its phone number.



MeetingPoint End Point - Subaddressing Properties

**Sub-Addressing** Phone number followed by an "i" character, and the series of numbers and/or letters making up the subaddress.

## Dialing

The Dialing Information area displays the **Country** that the selected user is in, the area code, and the appropriate digits for dialing an outside line (**External**), a **Long Distance** call, or an **International** call.

NOTE If the user needs to dial a specific digit to receive an external line, you must type that digit before the digits required for a long distance or international call.For example, if you must dial 9 to receive an external line, and then 01 to dial long distance, type 901 in the Long Distance box.

In the **My location** box, enter a description of the user's location, for your information.

Charlie Brown Pro	operties (Cruiset)	×
	Phone Numbers Switch Type   NSN   Sub-Addressing Dialog Information (2049)   United States of Assesse   Ages code   512   Long Satarce   1 External   9   International   0 Location Information Hyrigcation:  VCDN	Dialing
Talaphan	OK Cancel Apple	Heb

MeetingPoint End Point - Dialing Properties

## A.6 Hardware Properties

The Hardware Properties dialog box may be used for viewing and controlling various Audio and Camera settings of MeetingPoint end points.

## Audio

The Audio settings vary, according to the videoconferencing product installed in the selected end point.

#### 5750 DVA

Calegory	Ante Cases		
	Einligunten Mode		
	C Marcal	S Brute	C Speaker
Currentation 200	Audio Dright	Enter F A	cond Auder countil: Echo Canceller
<u> </u>	F	모	Annatic Gain Control Annatic Noise Supposition
	Specifier Effective		
Line Data	E marrier h		
32	Vokane invel Fr Enable Speginer	10m	
(E)	🕫 Enstin Histophere		
	1 or 1 or	search it is	eren linner

5750 DVA - Audio Properties

#### Configuration Mode

Select a mode for manual or automatic audio settings.

Manual	Select to choose audio settings one by one. Select this option if the selected end point has a PTZ camera or other optional hardware.
Private	Select to automatically select settings for headset audio.
Speaker	Select to automatically select settings for tower audio (if connected) or speaker audio (if a tower is not connected).

#### Appendix A MeetingPoint End Point Properties

#### Audio Origin

Active if Configuration Mode is **Manual**. Select an available audio input source. The selected end point can speak or send audio through one, two, or all three possible sources.

Desktop Camera	Select to use the camera's built-in microphone.
Headset	Select to use the supplied headset.
Aux/Line In	Select to use a microphone that's connected to the Line Level Audio In connector on the 5750 DVA rear panel. The source may be from a connected VCR or other external audio device.
Enhanced Audio	
Acoustic Echo Canceller	Select to prevent the remote party from hearing themselves from their own speakers. This condition occurs if the speaker output is received by the selected end point's microphone and sent back to the remote party.
Automatic Gain Control	Select to ensure that the remote parties hear the selected end point normally regardless of the speaker's distance from the microphone.
Automatic Noise Suppression	Select to mute surrounding noise. The result is that the remote parties only hear what the speaker says into the microphone.
Speaker	

Active if Configuration Mode is **Manual**. The selected end point emits audio through one or both of the following devices:

Tower Speaker	Select to emit audio from the 5750 DVA tower's built- in speaker.
Headset/ External	Select to emit audio from the headset or from another device connected to the Speaker connector on the 5750 DVA's side panel.

Volume level	
Enable Speaker	Select to control the volume of the selected end point's speaker. Drag the slider accordingly.
Enable Microphone	Select to control the volume through the selected end point's microphone.

## Camera

The Pan/ Tilt /Zoom Camera properties are applicable if a Pan/Tilt/Zoom-type (PTZ) camera is connected to the selected system. If a PTZ camera is not used, **None** appears as the PTZ camera type in the dialog box's top list and no communication port is required.

David Schot Pro	pesties (5750)	×
Calegory Conversion Conversion Cale	Aude Carers Buardinto Carers Barv/18/2our carers tox film Garers's communication pot	
Uner Data Betweet	Canvers Control 12' (Allow the remote side to control your comma referge	
Hard-see E	OK Cancel H	но

MeetingPoint End Point - Camera Properties

#### Camera

Pan/Tilt/ZoomThe manufacturer and/or model of the PTZ camera.camera type

Camera'sThe name of the computer port to which the cameracommunicationis connected.portItem to the computer port to which the camera

#### Camera Control

Allow the	Select to permit a remote party in a video meeting
remote side to	to control the positioning of the selected user's PTZ
control camera	camera. If a PTZ camera is not used, this option is
settings	not relevant.

# A.7 Advanced Properties

The Advanced Properties dialog box may be used for viewing end point system information and controlling various QoS, Intras, advanced Video, advanced Data, and advanced Audio settings of MeetingPoint end points.

## System Info

This tab displays information about the VCON or Mitel Networks videoconferencing system that's installed in the selected end point. If you contact Technical Support (see "Mitel Networks Technical Support" on page v) about a problem associated with this end point, include this information with your request.

happy 1 Propertie	es (5750) 🛛 🛛
Category	Spitem Info 005 Intra Video Audio Software Application Version: 4.00
Calk User Data	Operating System: Windows Me Multicast installed: Yes
Network	Hadware Board Type: MGD VIGD Modet Photessional
Hardware	Hardware ID: ((CB02018D-5080-46594056-718767676251)
Advanced	OK Cancel Acely Help

MeetingPoint End Point - System Information

Software

ApplicationVersion number of the MeetingPoint applicationVersionrunning on the end point's computer.

	MeetingPoint End Point Properties Appendix A
Operating System	Operating system that's installed on the end point's computer.
Multicast installed	Indicates if the end point's videoconferencing system includes VCON's Interactive Multicast feature.
Hardware	
Board Type	Videoconferencing system installed in the end point's computer.
ViGO Model	The model of the 5750 DVA.
Hardware ID	Unique identification number for the videoconferencing card's installation. This number is for Mitel Networks Technical Support use.

# QoS

The **QoS** tab contains properties for controlling the type of Quality of Service that will be used for transmitting packets from the specified MeetingPoint end point.

Calegory	Systeminio Qeli Isna Video	Aude
20 °	Pacety Type (QoS)	
9	C No Priority (Go5)	
100	F IP Precedence	
D	C Diffuervi	
22	Pricety values	
Liter Date	Video Psiołky	
-	4 - Flech Overide	<u>×</u>
	Audio Priority:	
failteast.	S-DRITIC/ECP	
19275	RTOP Pricely	
	E - Internetwork Control	*
Hardware		Periors QcS Delautz

MeetingPoint End Point - QoS Properties - Default Settings

Set QoS properties as follows:

Priority Type (QoS)

Select the type of QoS used for transmitting packets during heavy network congestion conditions.

No Priority	Network transfers packets using normal Best-effort (or Routine) packet transmission.
IP Precedence	Network gives priority to certain types of bits (video, audio, control) according to the eight levels of IP precedence.
Diffserv	Network transfers packets according to specific needs of the sending application.
Priority Values	
Video, Audio and RTCP Priority	For each packet type, select an appropriate priority level. The item with the highest priority number will be sent first, the item with the next highest number will be sent second, and so on.
	The priority levels vary, depending on whether the selected Priority Type is IP Precedence or Diffserv. For a list of Priority levels, see Appendix C, "QoS Priority Values".

To reset the Priority default values, click Restore QoS Defaults.

#### Intras

During videoconferences, MeetingPoint end points send periodic intras (full video frames) in order to synchronize the video display at the receiving party. You may define the interval between the transmission of intras from a specific MeetingPoint end point.



MeetingPoint End Point - Intras Properties

Send Intra Interval Type the length of the interval (in seconds) between intra transmissions.

## **Advanced Video**

The advanced Video tab permits you to enable usage of H.261 and H.263 for video transmission and to control the bandwidth thresholds for switching between the two standards, if applicable.

Laura 5 Properties	s (Escort)	x
Calegory	System Into   Go5   Inna Video   Aude	
20 °	Toronal H. 261	
9	F Enable H. 261 at maximum 1520 Ebps	
	F Enable OF	
	M Evable GCF	
100	Tierunit H. 262	-11
and the second second	F Enable H. 253 at meximum (256 Kbps	
무는	IF Enable CF	
The sector	F Evable GCF	
E.	Video karund nasimun packat son 1100 🔄 bytes	21
<b>S</b>		
Advanced	OK Cancel Posts Ha	6

MeetingPoint End Point - Advanced Video Properties

Transmit H.261/H.263

Enable H.261/ H.263 at Maximum	Select to enable the use of the specified video format coding from the specific MeetingPoint end point. In the box, type the maximum transmission rate at which the specific coding may be used.
	For example, for H.263 the default maximum transmission rate is 256 kbps. At higher rates, the H.263 coding is not available.
Enable CIF	CIF (Common Interchange Format) provides a higher resolution at a lower frame rate. If a higher bandwidth is available, CIF provides excellent video quality.
Enable QCIF	QCIF (Quarter Size Common Interchange Format) should be used if only low bandwidth is available, or if the remote party in a videoconference does not support CIF.

Switch from H.263 to H.261 at kbps	Enter a bandwidth threshold for switching from H.263 video transmission to H.261, if both codecs are supported. At all bandwidths higher than the specified value, the specified endpoint will use H.261.
Video Transmit maximum packet size	Enter the maximum video packet size (in bytes) which the specified end point may transmit.

To reset the advanced Video default values, click Restore Defaults.

# Advanced Audio

In the **Audio** tab, select the supported audio algorithms for transmitting audio from the specified end point. In addition, you can enter the audio transmit speed for all algorithms supported by the end point.

To reset the advanced Audio default values, click Restore Defaults.

ra 5 Propertie	s (Escurt)		
Calegory	Systeminio   Go5   Isna	Video: (P	ude
20	Packet are		
9	P Transmit G. 711 al.on at	60	nili-seconds
125	🐼 Transnik G. 711 ul. av al	80	nil-records
	17 Transmit G. 728 at	190	mili-seconds
Liner Date	🖗 Transmit G. 722 al.	150	nikieconti
	🔽 Transmit G. 722 at.	60	mili-seconds
Tert work	Field	e Defad	-
-	OK Cancel		Apply Help

MeetingPoint End Point - Advanced Audio Properties

Mitel Networks 5700 VFA Administrator's Guide

# **B** 5760 VIDEOCONFERENCING APPLIANCE END POINT PROPERTIES

From the 5700 VFA Administrator application, the administrator may view and control various properties of 5760 VCA end points. In the 5760 VCA Properties dialog box, the properties are divided into various categories:

5700 VFA	Properties defining how the 5760 VCA operates as parts of the 5700 VFA videoconferencing network (see "Setting End Point 5700 VFA Properties" on page 6-3).
Network	LAN, H.323, QoS, Phone Numbers, Switch Type, SPID Numbers
Video	Dual Monitor, Far End Camera Control
Audio	Audio Input, VCR Audio Mix, automatic adjustments
Options	General, Version

**NOTE** Properties cannot be changed while the 5760 VCA is engaged in a videoconference.

Appendix B 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance End Point Properties

# **B.1** Network Configuration

This section explains how to set up the 5760 VCA network and connections configuration. Network options may be edited at any time.

# LAN Connection and Registration

The LAN tab includes the 5760 VCA address and information about its connection to the LAN (Local Area Network).

FINELARGE Prope	rties (5760) 8
Category	LAN Fienval H323 Qu5
<b>*</b> @*	MAC address 000.00.87:10.00.9F
5700	Ditas wiRadaus tan s0HDP server
<u>.</u>	Local IP address: 10.39, 15, 54
Network	Subret wask: 255 255 25. 0
<b>_</b> *	DNE-server 10. 37. 10. 11
Video	WINE Sever. 10.37, 10, 11
*	Densin:
Audio	Delault patrovey. 10.39.15.1
<u>600</u>	
Úpfors	OK Cancel Assly Help

5760 VCA Lan Properties

Obtain an IP Address from a DHCP server	Select to enable 5760 VCA to receive its network configuration from the LAN's DHCP server and enter it automatically in the LAN tab.
IP Address	If this option is not selected, the LAN properties must be entered manually. IP address of the 5760 VCA.
	If 5760 VCA receives an address automatically, it is a temporary address which is liable to be changed when the network's users' IP addresses are updated periodically.
	If you manually enter an IP address here, the address remains permanently (when entering an IP address, do not enter leading zeroes).
Subnet Mask	Your company's subnet mask.

5760 Videoconferencing Appliance End Point Properties Appendix B

DNS Server	IP Addresses of the DNS server and the WINS server.
WINS Sorvor	to translate names to IP addresses
Nino Server	
Domain	DNS domain name of your company (for example,
	yourcompany.com).
Default Gateway	IP address of the network's Gateway router. The gateway
	helps 5760 VCA send and receive calls between subnets.

# Firewall

The Firewall tab includes information on the 5760 VCA firewall.

PIVELARGE Prope	rties (5760) 🗴
Category	LAN Feewall H323 Qu5
Ø	Note: Please make rune that your ferwall is configured to allow communication on port 1719 (Gatek eeper PAS) and 1729 (H.323 call tetup).
	RTP & RTCP Pot Range
	Lowest Port: 5004
Network	Highest Pot: 6004
, <b>_</b> *	Lise the same pot number for RTP reception and transmission.
Video	H 245 Part Range
*	Lowest Post: 9004
Audo	Highest Port: 6004
<u>600.</u>	
<b>Options</b>	OK Cancel Apply Help

5760 VCA LAN Properties

## H.323 Management

In the **H.323** tab, you can define how the 5760 VCA operates within a managed H.323 videoconferencing network.

FIVELARGE Prope	rties (5760) 🗴
Category	LAN Feenval H323 Qu5
E T	Galekeeper Configuration Galekeeper IP : 10. 39. 15. 20
<b>90</b>	NAT address:
Network	Ende lo synchroisation recharism
<b>,</b> _*	Los sutornalis bulleting control
Video	
**	
<u></u>	OK Cancel Acety Help
Options	

5760 VCA H.323 Properties

**Gatekeeper IP** Enter the IP address of the gatekeeper which manages the 5760 VCA (do not enter leading zeroes). This may be either the 5700 VFA's gatekeeper or another one used by your organization.

**NOTE** If the 5760 VCA is logged in to a non-Mitel Networks gatekeeper, the 5760 VCA status in the Main View is "Logged In to Management Server."

NAT IP	If your organization uses NAT (Network Address Translation) when communicating with parties in another LAN or WAN, type the external address for your computer.
	NAT helps protect a LAN from exposure to unwanted traffic by providing one single external address to remote users. NAT uses a system of local and external addresses to hide a LAN's users from other networks. A NAT server translates local parties' addresses to an external address, which is then used to identify the local party to remote parties. Therefore, remote parties use this external address to call the local party, without knowing its actual local address.
Enable Lip Synchronization Mechanism	Select this option to synchronize the audio and video of a LAN conversation.
Automatic Buffering Control	Buffer Control adjusts the video streams for the available dynamic bandwidth of IP networks.
	Select this option to make the buffer control automatic. Deselect it to make it adjustable during LAN conversations.

## QoS

The **QoS** tab contains properties for controlling the type of Quality of Service that will be used for transmitting packets from the 5760 VCA.

FIVELARGE Prope	ties (5760)	£
Calegory	LAN Frewall H323 Qa5	
2	Pionty Type (205) C No Prionty (205) C IP Presedence	
<b>90</b>	Pitoty values	
Network	Video Pliołłyc	I
<u> </u>	4 - Flach Overide	I
-	Audio Pricety.	I
Video	5-DRITIC / ECP	I
	RTOP Pricely.	I
1 - A - A - A - A - A - A - A - A - A -	6 - Internetwork Control	I
Audio	Percer Gas Defaults	
<u></u>		4
Options	OK Cancel Apply Help	

5760 VCA QoS Properties

## Priority Type (QoS)

Select the type of QoS used for transmitting packets during heavy network congestion conditions.

No Priority	Network transfers packets using normal Best-effort (or Routine) packet transmission.
IP Precedence	Network gives priority to certain types of bits (video, audio, control) according to the eight levels of IP precedence.
Diffserv	Network transfers packets according to specific needs of the sending application.

Priority Values

Video Priority<br/>Audio Priority<br/>RTCP PriorityFor each packet type, select an appropriate priority<br/>level. The item with the highest priority number will be<br/>sent first, the item with the next highest number will be<br/>sent second, and so on.The priority levels vary, depending on whether the<br/>selected Priority Type is IP Precedence or Diffserv. For<br/>a list of Priority levels, see Appendix C, "QoS Priority<br/>Values".

To reset the Priority default values, click Restore QoS Defaults.

#### **Phone Numbers**

The **Phone Numbers** tab lists the 5760 VCA's ISDN numbers of each line. Do not include your own country's international code or your local area code.



5760 VCA ISDN Phone Numbers

## Switch Type

In the **Switch Type** tab, the ISDN switch type used by the 5760 VCA appears. If a different switch type is being used (according to the ISDN carrier), select it from the list.



5760 VCA ISDN Switch Type

# **SPID Numbers**

If the selected ISDN Switch Type supports Service Profile Identifiers (SPID), this tab lists them for the ISDN lines. A SPID number relates to the capabilities of the end point on the ISDN line. This information may be obtained from the 5760 VCA's ISDN carrier.

VCONWest Prope	ertises (Faktors 19)	M
Category	Doli   Phone Numbers   Switch Type   SPID Humbers	1.
3	940 1 (16-20-000)	-
1700	SPID 2 (11290072600102	
00	5PD 3 (n	- 1
Neved	SPID & D	
	SPID 5 10	- 1
A Marco	5PD & 0	1
*		
and the second s	OK Cascel In or H	rip I

5760 VCA SPID Numbers

**SPID numbers** Type the SPID numbers as your ISDN carrier specifies. If your ISDN provider gave you only one SPID number, enter it in SPID 1. Appendix B 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance End Point Properties

# **B.2** Video Properties

The **Video** tab provides options for controlling the display of video in the *5760 VCA*.

FIVELARGE Prope	rbes (5760)	×
Category	Video	
7	🗖 Dual Monitor	
5700	Camera control by far end	
	Minimum time between two initias: 5 🚔 seconds.	
<b>99</b>	Enable H.323 Annex Q	
Network		
<b>,_</b> *		
Video		
*		
Audio		
<u></u>		
Üpéons -	OK Cancel Apply Help	

5760 VCA Video Properties

Dual Monitor	5760 VCA supports the use of two monitors to display both parties on full screens during videoconferences. One monitor displays remote video and the other monitor displays local video. Select this option only if two TV monitors are connected.
Camera Control by Far End	Far End Camera Control (FECC) enables the remote party to control the local party's camera, so that they see views that are convenient for them. FECC provides control over the pan/tilt/zoom positioning and the adjustment of brightness, color, contrast and hue.
Minimum Time between 2 intras	
Enable H.323 Annex Q	
# **B.3** Audio Properties

In the **Audio** tab, you can select and activate various audio properties in the selected 5760 VCA.

FIVELARGE Prope	rties (5760)	×
Category	Audio	
*275*	Audio input	VCR audio nie
	F Table top-mic	@ No mix
	C Line level	C VDR second
99		C VCR playback
Network	Acoustic echo cancelation (A	EC)
	Automatic pain control (AGC)	
Video	Automatic noise suppression	ANS) 5
*	Microphone gain level	۲
Auto -	Line in gain level	<u></u>
<b>ATT</b> .		
<b>Upfions</b>	OK. Cancel	Apply Help

5760 VCA Audio Properties

Audio input

Tabletop Mic	To use the supplied tabletop microphone or other audio device connected to the 5760 VCA's MIC connector, select Tabletop Mic.
Line Level	To use the microphone or audio device (such as VCR, mixer, etc.) connected to the 5760 VCA's VCR AUD IN connector, select Line Level.

# VCR audio mix

Mixing options determine how the audio from a VCR connected to the 5760 VCA is mixed and sent to the remote party or recorded to a VCR cassette. Select the appropriate VCR Audio Mix option:

No Mix	Both parties hear each other's audio only.
VCR Record	Both parties hear each other's audio while a VCR records both of them.

# Appendix B 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance End Point Properties

VCR Playback	Both parties hear each other's audio and the audio from a video cassette.
5760 VCA supports different types of vi	advanced features that improve audio quality for deoconferencing environments.
Acoustic Echo Cancellation (AEC)	Select to prevent the remote party from hearing themselves from their own speakers (selected by default). This condition occurs if the speaker output is received by the selected end point's microphone and sent back to the remote party. You should deselect AEC only if an external AEC device is in use.
Automatic Gain Control (AGC)	Select to ensure that the remote parties hear the selected end point normally regardless of the speaker's distance from the microphone. AGC improves audio for big rooms.
Automatic Noise Suppression (ANS)	Select to mute surrounding noise. The result is that the remote parties only hear what the speaker says into the microphone.
Microphone Gain Level	Set the desired microphone gain level.
Line in Gain Level	Set the desired line in gain level.

# **B.4** Options

# **General Options**

The **General** Options tab contains several options for defining how the selected 5760 VCA operates.

PIVELARGE Prope	rties (5760)	×
Category	General Version Security	
a T	F Auto Annwer	
<b>.</b>	View active keys      Remote Access	
<b>,,</b>	Force G722     Accept nulticast floor anyline	
Vdeo	Language: English 👱	1
Auto All		
Options	OK Cancel Apply Help	

5760 VCA General Options

Auto Answer	Select to enable the selected 5760 VCA to accept all incoming calls automatically (unless it is already engaged in a call).
Mute Outgoing Audio for Auto Answered Calls	Select to automatically mute your microphone for auto answered calls.
View Active Keys	Select to display a graphic of the remote control on the selected 5760 VCA's monitor. The graphic shows which functions are available and their respective keys at any given time.
Remote Access	Select to enable remote management (through a Web browser) of the selected 5760 VCA's configuration from another terminal.
	This setting does not affect management through the Property dialog box in the 5700 VFA Administrator.

Appendix B	5760 Videoconfe	erencing Appli	ance End Point	<b>Properties</b>
------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------	-------------------

Instant All	Select to enable the selected 5760 VCA to dial all ISDN numbers of a remote party at the same time and then synchronize. This may help speed up the connection.
Force G.722	Select to enable the selected 5760 VCA to transmit audio according to G.722 standard, producing high audio quality. The remote device must also support G.722. If the remote device is also 5760 VCA, this option must also be selected for it.
Accept Multicast Floor Anytime	Select to always accept multicast floor.
Language	Select the language of the selected 5760 VCA's interface. All menus and options appear in the selected language.

# Version

The **Version** tab displays hardware and software version information for the 5760 VCA. If you contact Mitel Networks Technical Support about this unit, provide the information on this page.

If the 5760 VCA model changes (among LAN only, 1-BRI, 3-BRI models), enter the new Software Key that you received from your distributor.

CONWest Prope	rties (Falcon IP)				×
Calegory	General Venion				
8	Software Veniore	02001407.029.1	115		
NON	Software Key	VE318EF47VC	_	_	
00	Hardware Version	JIM.25			
Datest	Hadnase Seaal	Vousene?			
and the second s					
10					
-					
0441					
MUD	ox 1	Cascel	(Alasti	1 144	
Cip/cont.	en .		11400		

5760 VCA Version Information

# Security

Use the Security tab to set security parameters for the 5760 VCA.



5760 VCA Security Information

B-16

# C QOS PRIORITY VALUES

The tables in this appendix list the available priority values for Quality of Service (QoS) configuration. The 5700 VFA Administrator application supports QoS configuration of Mitel Networks 5760 VCA and VCON MeetingPoint 4.5 (and higher) end points.

# C.1 IP Precedence Values

Description
Routine
Priority
Immediate
Flash
Flash Override
Critic/ECP
Internetwork Control
Network Control

# C.2 DiffServ Values

# ValueDescription000000Probability Timely Forwarding 0001000Probability Timely Forwarding 1010000Probability Timely Forwarding 2011000Probability Timely Forwarding 3100000Probability Timely Forwarding 3100000Probability Timely Forwarding 4101000Probability Timely Forwarding 5110000Probability Timely Forwarding 5110000Probability Timely Forwarding 6111000Probability Timely Forwarding 7101110Expedited Forwarding001010Forward Class 1 Low Drop001100Forward Class 1 Mid Drop001110Forward Class 2 Low Drop010100Forward Class 2 Mid Drop

**010110** Forward Class 2 High Drop

# Appendix C QoS Priority Values

# Value Description

- 011010 Forward Class 3 Low Drop
- **011100** Forward Class 3 Mid Drop
- 011110 Forward Class 3 High Drop
- **100010** Forward Class 4 Low Drop
- **100100** Forward Class 4 Mid Drop
- **100110** Forward Class 4 High Drop

# D Using Accord<sup>™</sup> MGC with the 5700 VFA

The Accord<sup>™</sup> MGC operates under a different configuration model than most other MCUs being used in the videoconferencing sector. This appendix provides instructions for setting up the MGC's configuration for operation in conjunction with the 5700 VFA. In addition, this appendix includes instructions for setting up an Accord Meeting Room for ad-hoc videoconferences.

**NOTE** This appendix only provides information directly related to the integrated operation of the Accord MGC with the 5700 VFA. For additional information about using the MGC, see the MGC's accompanying user documentation.

# D.1 MGC Configuration

# **Network Services Configuration**

Create a new Network Service, or if you're editing an existing configuration, choose the one that you want to change.

# **>** To set up Network Service properties

- 1. Run the Accord MGC management application.
- 2. In the left pane, browse through the tree to MCU Configuration, Network Services, and Network Services-H.323.

# Appendix D Using Accord™ MGC with the 5700 VFA



Browsing to Network Services-H.323

3. Create a new Network Service or choose the existing one allocated for use with your 5700 VFA.

nice Name 1130	9 MON	Gestere	
nice Tape	tiat P	External	- F
letwork.		External	
Subnet Mask		10 . 0 . 10 . 248	
	the second s	Pat	
275 . 295 .	0 + 0	1719	-
275.255.	0 + 0	1719 Prefs	
255.255.	0 . 0	1719 Prefii 1234	-
275 . 275 . I	0 + 0	1719 Prefis 1234	
Content Content Ficcular	10 , 0 , 0 , 2	1719 Prefu 1234 54	
275 - 275 - 1 Codens Default Picader    Bacter IP	10 , 0 , 0 , 2	1719 Prefix 1234 54 Parante Type	
Coden Coden Codeal Picator   Router I <sup>n</sup>	0 + 0 10 , 0 , 0 , 1 Rende P	1719 Prefix 1234 54 Parrute Type	
275 - 275 - 1 Codeni Codesi Picater T Bischer P	0 + 0	1719 Prefix 1234 54 Parrute Type	
275 - 275 - 1 Koden Ontrad Picater T Rester P	0 + 0	1719 Prefix 1234 54 Paraste Type	

Network Services - Setting Configuration for 5700 VFA

#### Using Accord<sup>™</sup> MGC with the 5700 VFA Appendix D

4. In	the	Setting	tab,	enter	the	follo	wing	inform	nation:
-------	-----	---------	------	-------	-----	-------	------	--------	---------

Subnet Mask	IP subnet mask used by the connected network.	
Default Router	IP address of the default router used by the connected network.	
Gatekeeper	Select <b>External</b> . The 5700 VFA is an external gatekeeper in relation to the MGC.	
External	IP address of the 5700 VFA.	
Port	1719 - standard RAS port.	
Prefix	Prefix that must be dialed in addition to all of the MGC's Meeting Rooms' directory numbers (or "node number"). This number must be within the permitted directory number range (see "Dial Plan" on page 5-5) and be the same number of digits.	
	For example, if the prefix is "1234" and the Meeting Room's directory number is 1095, then a user must dial "12341095" to enter the videoconference.	

- 5. The **Span** tab displays a list of H.323 cards in the MGC. You must enter a Circuit ID and unique alias for each H.323 card. Click the plus (+) button to add a new card configuration.
- 6. Enter the following information:

**Circuit ID** Unique number for the H.323 card in the MGC.

**IP Address** IP address for the H.323 card.

Alias Enter one H.323 ID alias for this card (must be unique in the 5700 VFA).

Appendix D Using Accord™ MGC with the 5700 VFA

Denil D  121	PAdens [11,0,10,%
Man	
day 3	Tax (H)210 ¥
time 2	Tem (H325-0 )
and [	Taper (H323-0
A REAL PROPERTY AND A REAL	

Adding a New H.323 Card Configuration

7. Click OK.

# **H.323 Card Configuration**

After setting up the Network Services configuration, assign the appropriate Circuit IDs to the H.323 cards in the MGC.

# To assign a Circuit ID to an H.323 card

- 1. In the left pane, open the Cards object. Select the slot of the H.323 card.
- 2. Right-click the card, and then click Properties. The Card Settings dialog box appears.
- 3. In the H.323 Network Parameters tab, enter the Circuit ID for this card.
- 4. Click OK.

**NOTE** Following Network Services and H.323 card configuration, make sure that the Circuit IDs, IP addresses, and Service Type correspond in both configurations.

# Using Accord<sup>™</sup> MGC with the 5700 VFA Appendix D

	Interest Parameters 14	N Gatekaraper   LAW
Ethered Epsel	23 Nervol: Pleaneter	
Citodi ID	2942	Nall-Configuration
Service Name:	H.323-MOM	
(PAdeen	CH and the	10.0
		FURTH TO
Stack Controller Software	and the second se	Don The
Stack Controller Software 1 RTP processors Software 1	Aerices :	0.00.333
Stack Controller Software V RTP processor Suffrage V HUNC Software Version	Version :	0.00.100 0.00.4

H.323 Card Network Parameters

# D.2 Adding an Accord Meeting Room

A Meeting Room is a hunting group of MCU services provided by the Accord MGC or other Accord hunting groups. A multipoint videoconference managed by the MGC must be associated with a Meeting Room.

If you will use the MGC to manage ad-hoc videoconferences, you must define this ability in a Meeting Room configuration.

**NOTE** To set up Meeting Rooms in the MGC, see the Accord MGC user documentation

#### To add an Accord Meeting Room to the Main View

 Right-click the 5700 VFA object, point to Add Node, and click New Accord Meeting Room. The New Accord Meeting Room wizard appears.

# Appendix D Using Accord™ MGC with the 5700 VFA

- 2. Change properties according to your multipoint videoconferencing specifications, or keep the default settings. When you finish each page of the wizard, click **Next**. For explanations about the various properties, see the following section.
- 3. When you finish the last page, click **Finish**.

# D.3 Setting Meeting Room Properties

In step 2 of "To add an Accord Meeting Room to the Main View" in the previous section, the wizard provided the chance to change various Meeting Room properties. This section describes these properties.

# **General Properties**

The General page contains identity information of the new Meeting Room.

Description	000	-	

Accord Meeting Room - General Properties

In the General page, enter the following information:

Directory Number	Assign a directory number for the Meeting Room.
Description	Type an identity for the Meeting Room. This description does not affect the operation of the system.

# **Ad-hoc Conference Properties**

A point-to-point conference becomes an ad-hoc conference when additional end points are "invited" by one of the parties and they join the session. In the **Ad-hoc Conference** page, you can make this Meeting Room available for use in ad-hoc conferences. This availability may be in addition to basic multipoint videoconferencing or exclusive for ad-hoc conferences.

**NOTE** Expansion to ad-hoc videoconference is available only for licensed users of the Conference Control Option. If you want to add this option to your 5700 VFA, please contact your local Mitel Networks distributor.

P Use this co	rvice exclusively for a	d too conterence d too conterence	# M	
You may selec	Lohe leibutes in P	e olisio Arro	0.102	

Accord Meeting Room - Ad-hoc Conference Properties

Enable ad-hoc videoconferencing using this Meeting Room as follows:

Use this service as an ad-hoc conference resource	Select to make this Meeting Room available for use when expanding to an ad-hoc videoconference.
Use this service exclusively for ad-hoc conferences	Select to make this Meeting Room available only for use in ad-hoc videoconferences, and unavailable for point-to-point sessions.

Ad-hoc	Click this link to open the 5700 VFA's Ad-hoc
Resources page	Resources Properties, in which you can also select
	which Meeting Rooms may be used for ad-hoc
	videoconferences (see "Ad-hoc Resources" on
	page 5-13).

# **Hunting Group Properties**

In the Hunting Group Properties page, you can place specific H.323 cards (installed in the MGC) and/or other Accord hunting groups in the hunting group. Only selected cards may manage multipoint videoconferences that require this Meeting Room's services. The cards may be identified either by their prefixes or by their aliases.

Descaption V [1234] V candi candi candi	Numbei 1234 1001 1000	Select All Clear All

Accord Meeting Room - Hunting Group Properties

Select any number of cards from the list to be in the hunting group.

- To place all cards in the hunting group, click Select All.
- To clear all the selections, click Clear All.

# **LDAP** Properties

The **LDAP** page provides information about the Meeting Room's registration, if applicable, in an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server. For information about nodes' LDAP Properties, see "LDAP Properties" on page 6-14.

**NOTE** A Meeting Room that's defined exclusively for ad-hoc videoconferences does not appear in the online directory.

# **Additional ID Properties**

In addition to its directory (E.164) number, a Meeting Room may have other addresses that may be used to dial it, such as additional E.164 addresses and/or H.323 Alias. In the **Additional ID** page, you may enter these, if applicable. For more information about adding Additional IDs, see "Additional IDs Properties" on page 6-15.

D-10

# E UPGRADING 5760 VIDEOCONFERENCING APPLIANCE SOFTWARE

This appendix explains how to upgrade your 5760 VCA to the latest software version through the 5700 VFA Administrator application. The utility is called the 5760 VCA Upgrade program.

The latest software version is supplied by your local Mitel Networks distributor.



**CAUTION** Make sure that you do not restart a 5760 VCA until the instructions specifically tell you to do so.

- Before you begin an upgrade, make sure that you initiate it during a quiet period of the network. Heavy network traffic may interfere with the procedure and cause upgrade failures.
- A Make sure that the possibility of electrical failure is at a minimum.
- Make sure that the computer from which the upgrade will run (same as the 5700 VFA Administrator application's computer) fills the following requirements:
  - Windows 95, 98, 2000, ME, or NT. If it uses Windows NT, Service Packet 5.0 is necessary as well.
  - Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 or later must be installed.
  - It should not run other programs at the same time as the 5760 VCA upgrade program.
- Decide whether the upgrade process should begin automatically, or if the 5760 VCA user should be able to accept or reject it before it begins.
  - If the 5760 VCA systems will be upgraded when the users are not working, the procedure should be automatic.
  - If the upgrade is going to take place during working hours, you might require user approval, to prevent disturbing an important call.

Appendix E Upgrading 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance Software

# E.1 Running the Upgrade Program



5760 VCA User Instructions

 Set up 5760 VCA for remote access (Menu/Options; see page 11-1 of the 5760 VCA User's Guide).



5700 VFA Administrator User Instructions

Click Start/Programs/5760VCA Tools/5760VCA Upgrade.

The upgrade program starts.



1.

5760 VCA Upgrade Program Window

1.	To see the IP address of the 5760 VCA unit, press <status> and open the LAN tab.</status>	2.	In the <b>IP Address</b> box in the 5760 VCA Upgrade program window, enter the IP address of the 5760 VCA (do not enter leading zeroes).
		3.	Click Upgrade.
		4.	Browse the CD-ROM or the location folder you received and double-click the zip file containing the new version. When asked to confirm the upgrade, click <b>Yes</b> .

# Upgrading 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance Software Appendix E



5760 VCA User Instructions

The 5760 VCA monitor displays a progress bar after the upgrade begins.



5700 VFA Administrator User Instructions

The upgrade process begins. The bar at the bottom of the window shows the actual progress of the upgrade.



Version Update Progress Bar on the 5760 VCA TV Monitor



**CAUTION** The entire procedure takes about 30 minutes. Do not try to initiate videoconferences with the 5760 VCA or change its configuration during this process. Do **not** restart 5760 VCA until the upgrade process is complete!

# Appendix E Upgrading 5760 Videoconferencing Appliance Software

# E.2 Applying the New Upgrade





- 1. When the progress bar shows that Step 4 of 4 is complete, wait for the remote PC user to inform you that the upgrade is complete, and then restart 5760 VCA.
- 2. When the system restarts, a message appears.



Press <OK> to accept the upgrade.

5760 VCA now transfers your old configuration parameters and Phone Book to the new version and starts the Post-Upgrade procedures.



5700 VFA Administrator User Instructions

1. When the process is complete, a message appears, saying that the upgrade is complete.



Click **OK**. Restart the 5760 VCA unit, or tell the 5760 VCA user to restart it.

 Wait for confirmation from the 5760 VCA user that upgrade was successful; that 5760 VCA passed through the Post-Upgrade procedures without problems and that the Guide Screen opened.



**CAUTION** If you do not press <OK> now on the 5760 VCA unit, the system will restart in Installer Mode (see "Installer Mode" on page EE-5).

# E.3 Post-Upgrade Procedures

The upgrade process from the 5700 VFA Administrator application has been successfully completed. Now 5760 VCA begins the Post-Upgrade procedures.

After you press the OK button on the remote control, a message appears on the TV monitor.



Do not turn off, restart, or use 5760 VCA at this point. Wait a few minutes until the next message appears.



5760 VCA then restarts itself and runs through the usual opening process. Wait until the 5760 VCA's Guide Screen appears.

After the Guide Screen appears, 5760 VCA is ready for use!

# E.4 Installer Mode

If for some reason the upgrade was not successfully completed, 5760 VCA enters Installer Mode after it restarts. This mode allows you to rerun the upgrade process until it is successfully completed. You will know that you are in Installer Mode because the TV monitor displays a different background.



Installer Mode Background

A possible reason for unsuccessful installation is a mistaken IP address for the 5760 VCA.

- 1. Press <Menu>. The Set Network LAN dialog opens.
- 2. Keep the same IP address or assign another static IP address. Press <OK>.
- 3. Rerun the upgrade process from the 5760 VCA Upgrade Program. Be sure to enter the correct IP address for the 5760 VCA (when entering an IP address, do not enter leading zeroes).

# E.5 Software Key Upgrade

To upgrade from 5760 VCA Administrator Model 1 to Model 3, contact your local reseller for details on purchasing a software key.

# **>** To change Models with the software key

1. Contact your local Mitel Networks reseller with a request to purchase the software key for a Model upgrade.

After Mitel Networks processes your order, you will receive the new software key.

2. Turn on 5700 VFA Administrator and press <Menu>. The Menu opens.



5760 VCA Menu

- 3. Select Version. The Version dialog box appears.
- 4. Press the down arrow key until **Software Key** is highlighted.
- 5. Enter the software key that you received.
- 6. Press <OK> to apply the changes and then restart 5700 VFA Administrator.

# F SETTING UP THE 5020/5220 IP PHONE TO WORK WITH 5700 VFA

The Mitel Networks<sup>™</sup> 5700 Voice First Application (VFA) server acts as a gateway for video terminals with each terminal consisting of a camera, video screen and telephone. Video transmission is handled through the 5700 VFA server while audio transmission is performed by the Mitel Networks 5020/5220 IP Phone. The 5700 VFA monitors the call progress of all registered 5020/5220 IP Phones and notifies any sets that are involved in calls using videoconferencing. To do so, the 5700 VFA requires the 5020/5220 IP Phone's Directory Number in order to get the appropriate call state information. In turn, the 5020/5220 IP Phones require the 5700 VFA's IP address in order to initiate communication to the server.

For the two to interact properly, you must:

- Manually program the IP address of the 5700 VFA server on the 5020/5220 IP Phone. One of the programmable keys on the phone will be defined as the "VIDEO" button used for the audio portion of videoconferencing calls through the set.
- 2. Register the 5020/5220 IP Phone with the VFA Administrator.
- NOTE 5020/5220 IP Phones programmed with a "VIDEO" key will reserve that key for videoconferencing, except for the Prime Line (bottom-right key). You cannot re-program the key either through the Mitel Networks<sup>™</sup> 3300 Integrated Communications Platform 's (ICP) Desktop Tool or using the Superkey.

# F.1 Programming a 5020/5220 IP Phone To Interact With A 5700 VFA

The purpose of this procedure is to store the static IP address of the 5700 VFA server into a 5020/5220 IP Phone's non-volatile (flash) memory. This will program the phone so that the "Video" function is permanently assigned to a specified key.

**NOTE** Before beginning this procedure, obtain the IP address of the server on which the 5700 VFA is running.

# Appendix F Setting Up The 5020/5220 IP Phone To Work With 5700 VFA

# To program "Video" settings to a 5020/5220 IP Phone:

- 1. Unplug the power cord from the set to ensure it is off.
- 2. Hold down the top-right programmable key (as indicated in the image below) while plugging the power back in. *Ensure you hold down the "Video" key for at least three seconds while the phone powers up.*



Mitel Networks 5020/5220 IP Phone indicating key to be used for "Video"

**NOTE** While the designation card provided indicates that the top-right key should be used for "Video", any of the programmable keys on the 5020/5220 IP Phone may be used for this function. To avoid confusion, it is recommended that the top-right key be used so that the programming of the key is consistent with the designation card.

Setting Up The 5020/5220 IP Phone To Work With 5700 VFA Appendix F

3. Press '#' when the following display appears:

If you press '\*' your session will end and you must power up the set again.

- **NOTE** Use the Volume Up/Down keys to scroll through the menu. Press '\*' to reverse an entry (i.e., to correct an error) and press '#' to insert a decimal and move forward into another IP address field.
  - 4. In the Video Server Setup Screen (shown below), press '#' to continue.

VIDEOSVR SETUP MODE ^SCROLL \*BKSP #FWD

5. Enter the IP address of the 5700 VFA server, and press the Volume Down key to continue.

```
INPUT VIDEO ADDRESS:
xxx.xxx.xxx
```

6. Enter the Directory Number of the phone, and press the Volume Down key to continue.

INPUT DN:

7. At the "Store In NVRAM?" prompt, press '#' to store the IP address in the phone's non-volatile memory.

STORE IN NVRAM? \*=NO #=YES

**NOTE** Even if the flash memory on the phone is upgraded, the IP address stored on the phone for the 5700 VFA server is static data that will be retained and used at power up.

The phone will then reboot and from this point forward, will use the "Video" key to communicate to the 5700 VFA server at the stored IP address. Do not remove power to the phone until it has finished rebooting.

# Appendix F Setting Up The 5020/5220 IP Phone To Work With 5700 VFA

# To view current "Video" settings on a 5020/5220 IP Phone:

- 1. Unplug the power cord from the set to ensure it is off.
- Hold down the top-right programmable key while plugging the power back in.

Ensure you hold down the "Video" key for at least three seconds while the phone powers up.

3. The following display will appear:

SET VIDEOSVR ADDRES?
\*=NO 0=VIEW #=YES

If you press '\*' your session will end and you must power up the set again.

4. Press '0' and the following display will appear:

VIEW SETTINGS MENU JSE ^ KEYS TO SCROLL

This will display previously enabled static parameters. Use the volume keys to scroll through the menu and review the settings. When you are finished, unplug and replug the power cord from the set, and wait for it to reboot.

# To remove programmed "Video" settings from a 5020/5220 IP Phone:

- 1. Unplug the power cord from the set to ensure it is off.
- 2. Hold down the top-right programmable key while plugging the power back in.

Ensure you hold down the "Video" key for at least three seconds while the phone powers up.

3. The following display will appear:

SET VIDEOSVR ADDRES?
\*=NO 0=VIEW #=YES

If you press '\*' your session will end and you must power up the set again.

#### Setting Up The 5020/5220 IP Phone To Work With 5700 VFA Appendix F

4. Press '#' to enter static parameters.

Use the Volume Up/Down keys to scroll through the menu. Press '\*' to reverse an entry (i.e., to correct an error) and press '#' to insert a decimal and move forward into another IP address field.

VIDEOSVR	SETUP	MODE
^SCROLL	*BKSP	#FWD

5. To remove static parameters that were previously enabled, press '\*'.

JSE	PRESENT	SETTINGS
*=D]	ISABLE	#=ENABLE

6. At the "Save And Exit" screen, press '#'. The phone powers up again with no "Video" settings retained in its Flash memory.

SAVE AND EXIT? \*=NO #=YES

# G THE 3300 ICP AND THE 5700 VFA

The Mitel Networks 3300 Integrated Communications Platform (ICP) requires specific programming in order to interact seamlessly with 5700 VFA.

# G.1 Networking 3300 ICPs

You can network up to four (4) 3300 ICPs. For proper operation, the 3300 ICP network must be configured as follows:

- use a uniform numbering plan (each phone on the 3300 ICP network has a unique extension).
- give each 3300 ICP a Node ID.

See the 3300 ICP documentation for information on implementing a numbering plan and assigning Node IDs.

# G.2 Programming Class of Service for IP Phones

All the IP Phones that will be interacting with the 5700 VFA must have the following Class of Service options enabled:

- HCI/CTI/TAPI Call Control Allowed
- HCI/CTI/TAPI Monitor Allowed

See the 3300 ICP documentation for information on programming Class of Service for IP Phones.

# Appendix G The 3300 ICP and the 5700 VFA

# G.3 Entering the 3300 ICP Information in the 5700 VFA

# The Mitel PBX View

The Mitel PBX view provides information on the 3300 ICP(s) to which the 5700 is connected.

# ▶ To open the Mitel PBX view



Click the Mitel PBX View button.

	PBX Name	Network Address	Use PBX7	Node ID	Part	Open Retry (seconds)
	10.37.208.240	10.37.208.248	P	123	8000	90
	10.37.208.250	10.37.209.290	P	458	8000	90
٠	110.000		<b></b>	100000	9900	90

Mitel PBX View

The Mitel PBX view shows the following information. To enter the information, click in the associated cell, and type in the information.

PBX Name	The name of the 3300 ICP.				
Network Address	The IP address of the 3300 ICP.				
Use PBX?	Whether this 3300 ICP is used with the 5700 or not.				
Node ID	The Node ID of the 3300 ICP.				
	<b>NOTE</b> If the 3300 ICP has more than one Node ID, enter its Primary Node ID here.				
Port	The port of the 3300 ICP.				
Open Retry	Open retry delay, in seconds.				

# G.4 Multi-Party Conference Calls

All the parties that are video-capable will receive notification via the Video LED that at least one other party has video capability. The first four (4) parties to push their Video LED will be visible in Continuous Presence (if there are only two video-capable parties, the video conference will be point-to-point). The others will be added to Continuous Presence if one or more of the first four parties drop out of the call.

 For example, if one of the parties in Continuous Presence drops out of the call, the fifth person that pressed their Video LED key will then be visible in Continuous Presence.

Mitel Networks 5700 VFA Administrator's Guide

# INDEX

# **Numerics**

5020/5220 IP Phone F-1 5700 VFA 1-1 Administrator application 1-2, 2-1, 3-1 to 3-7 customizing 13-1 to 13-22 Gatekeeper 1-2 installation. Administrator 2-5 installation. Server 2-3 LDAP Proxy 1-3 license key 2-7, 5-19 login to 5700 VFA Administrator 2-9 running application 2-8 Server 2-1 Server properties 5-1 to 5-24 Ad-hoc Resources 5-13 Advanced settings 5-22 Bandwidth control 5-10 Billing 5-23 Call Settings 5-12 Connection 5-2 Dial Plan 5-5 to 5-8, 9-14 Dialing prefixes 5-14 Event Log 4-21, 5-24 ISDN Routing 5-14 LDAP settings 5-9, 9-15 License 5-17 Non-registered devices 5-19 Security Mode 5-15, 9-2, 9-15 System Info 5-4 System location 5-14 Zone settings 5-20, 9-2, 9-15 system requirements 2-1 5700 VFA attributes 10-26 to 10-29 5700 VFA container 10-32 5700 VFA Server installing 2-3 5700 VFA Transfer Model between zones 9-12, 9-19 through gateway 7-5 through MCU 8-5

5720 VCB services 12-11 properties Additional IDs 12-17 Ad-hoc Conference 12-13 Bandwidth control 12-17 General 12-12 LDAP 12-17
5760 VCA end points. See end points, 5760 VCA
5760 VCA Upgrade program E-1

# A

Accord Meeting Room D-5 properties Additional IDs D-9 Ad-hoc Conference D-7 General D-6 Hunting Group D-8 LDAP D-9 Accord MGC configuration D-1 to D-5 adding Accord Meeting Room D-5 Administrative group 4-33 Administrator 4-1 to 4-3 gateway 7-1 gateway service 7-3, 7-8 Gateway Service hunting group 7-10 hunting group 4-27 to 4-32 MCU Service Permission Group 8-13 neighbor gateway 9-21 neighbor MCU 9-23 node 4-4 to 4-7 non-registered device 9-13 zones 9-15 Additional IDs properties 5720 VCB service 12-17 Accord Meeting Room D-9 end points 6-15 Gateway Service hunting groups 7-11 hunting groups 4-32

#### Index

MCU 8-6 MCU service 8-12 Short Dial Numbers 4-37 zones 9-13 Ad-hoc Conference properties 5700 VFA Server 5-12 5720 VCB services 12-13 Accord Meeting Room D-7 MCU services 8-9 Ad-hoc Resources properties 5-13 ad-hoc videoconferences 1-3, 12-1 dialing code 5-8, 12-18 expanding to 12-18 license 5-18 Administrative group 4-33 Administrator 1-3 adding 4-1 to 4-3 password 4-2 properties 4-1 to 4-3 Super User 4-2 Administrator application, 5700 VFA 1-2, 2-1, 3-1 to 3-7 asset management reports license 5-18

# В

Bandwidth control 5720 VCB services 12-17 end points 6-7 gateway services 7-9 inter-zone calls 9-17 MCU 8-4 MCU services 8-9 zones 9-7

# С

Call forward 6-5 5700 VFA Server properties 5-13 between zones 9-12, 9-19 no answer dialing code 5-7 end points 6-6 on busy dialing code 5-7

end points 6-6 through gateway 7-5 through MCU 8-5 unconditional 5-8 Call Forward properties hunting groups 4-29 Call pickup dialing code 5-7 permissions 6-8 Call transfer between zones 9-12, 9-19 dialing code 5-8 through gateway 7-5 through MCU 8-5 CDR enabling billing 5-23 for inter-zone calls 9-6 license 5-18 Closed mode 4-4, 5-17 end points 6-1 gateways 7-1 MCUs 8-1 zones 9-3, 9-15 Conference Control Option 5-18 Continuous Presence 12-1, 12-14

# D

Defined Zones search 9-15 deleting login request 4-5, 4-6, 7-2, 8-2 dialing between zones 9-14 to 9-17 Dialing prefixes properties 5-14 DiffServ values C-1, F-4 directory numbers 4-11, 9-14

# Ε

E.164 number 4-11 editing nodes 4-4 to 4-12 Empty Capability Set through gateway 7-6 through MCU 8-6 to neighboring zones 9-13 end points 1-1, 1-3, 6-1 Open mode login 4-4
password 6-4 properties 5700 VFA 6-3 to 6-15 Additional IDs 6-15 Bandwidth control 6-7 Call Forwarding 6-5 Gateway Services 6-10 General 5700 VFA 6-3 ISDN Call Routing 6-12 LDAP 6-14 MCU Service permissions 6-9 Pickup permissions 6-8 Product info 6-13 Status 6-4 setup 6-1 to 6-2 end points, 5760 VCA properties Audio B-11 Network B-2 to B-9 Options B-13 Video B-10 end points, MeetingPoint properties Advanced A-26 to A-31 Calls A-6 to A-11 Communication A-13 to A-16 Conversation A-1 to A-5 Hardware A-23 to A-26 Telephony A-17 to A-22 User Data A-12 Event Log 3-1, 3-6, 4-20 to 4-25 filtering records 4-22 to 4-25

## F

filtering Event Log 4-22 to 4-25 Main View 3-5 Find items 4-7 to 4-9 in Main View 4-7 in other Views 4-9 Firewall properties 5720 VCB 12-4 Forward Facility messages between zones 9-12 through gateway 7-6 through MCU 8-6

## G

Gatekeeper 5700 VFA 1-2, 1-3 Open mode 4-4 gateway 1-3, 7-1 adding 7-1 adding neighbor gateway 9-21 login 7-1 properties General 7-4 ISDN dialing 7-6 Product info 7-5 Gateway Service hunting groups 7-9 adding 7-10 adding services 7-6 calls from neighboring zones 9-9 end points receiving services 6-10 MCU receiving services 8-11 properties Additional IDs 7-11 General 7-10 Hunting Group 7-11 sharing services with other zones 9-21 gateway services 5-7 adding 7-3, 7-8 properties Bandwidth control 7-9 General 7-8 sharing with other zones 9-20, 9-22 Gateway Services properties end points 6-10 General properties 5720 VCB 12-3, 12-4, 12-5, 12-6, 12-7, 12-8, 12-9, 12-10 5720 VCB services 12-12 Accord Meeting Room D-6 end points 6-3 Gateway Service hunting groups 7-10 gateway services 7-8 gateways 7-4 hunting groups 4-28

#### Index

MCU 8-3 MCU Service Permission Groups 8-14 MCU services 8-8 Short Dial Numbers 4-35 zones 9-4

### Н

H.450.3 between zones 9-12, 9-19 through gateway 7-5 through MCU 8-5 hunting groups 1-3 adding 4-27 to 4-32 gateway services 7-9 properties 4-27 to 4-32 Additional IDs 4-32 Call Forward 4-29 Gateway Service hunting groups 7-11 General 4-28 Hunting Group 4-30 LDAP 4-31

### I

ILS, 5700 VFA configuration 10-3 to 10-6 ILS,5700 VFA configuration in 5700 VFA Administrator 10-5 Information Request Messages (IRQ) gateway 7-6 MCU 8-6 initiating hang up videoconference 11-2 point-to-point videoconference 11-1 installation 5700 VFA Administrator 2-5 5700 VFA Server 2-3 5760 VCA E-1 to E-6 Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge 2-6 Installer Mode, 5760 VCA E-5 Internet Location Server. See ILS, 5700 VFA configuration Invite dialing code 5-8, 12-18 IP Precedence values C-1

ISDN Call Routing properties 6-12 ISDN dialing, gateway properties 7-6 ISDN Routing zones 9-11 ISDN Routing properties 5-14

### Κ

key, license 2-7, 5-19

### L

LDAP 1-4 LDAP directories 10-1 to 10-2 5700 VFA configuration in ILS 10-3 to 10-6 in Microsoft Exchange Server 10-7 to 10-11 in NDS 10-26 to 10-36 in Windows 2000 Active Directories 10-12 to 10-25 LDAP directories 5700 VFA configuration in ILS 10-3 to 10-6 LDAP Group object configuration 10-33 LDAP properties 5700 VFA Server 5-9, 9-15 5720 VCB services 12-17 Accord Meeting Room D-9 end points 6-14 hunting groups 4-31 MCU services 8-12 Short Dial Numbers 4-37 LDAP Proxy 1-3 LDAP Servers View 3-1, 3-7 5700 VFA configuration in ILS 10-5 5700 VFA configuration in Microsoft Exchange Server 10-10 5700 VFA configuration in NDS 10-35 5700 VFA configuration in Windows 2000 Active Directories 10-25 license key 2-7, 5-19 Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. See LDAP directories login 1-4 Closed mode 4-4, 5-17, 6-1, 9-3 deleting request 4-5, 4-6, 7-2, 8-2

duplicate user 6-2 end points 6-1 to 6-2 gateway 7-1 granting permission 4-4, 4-16 MCU 8-1 new 5700 VFA 2-9 Open mode 4-4, 5-16, 6-1, 9-2 rejecting 4-5, 4-6, 7-2, 8-2 zones 9-2 Login Status View 3-1, 3-6, 4-16

### Μ

Main View 3-1, 3-2 to 3-5 customizing 13-1 to 13-3 filtering 3-5 finding items 4-7 MCU 1-4. 8-1 Accord MGC configuration D-1 to D-5 adding neighbor MCU 9-23 Closed mode 8-1 login 8-1 Open mode 4-4, 8-1 properties Additional IDs 8-6 Bandwidth control 8-4 General 8-3 Product Info 8-5 MCU Service Permission Groups 8-13 adding 8-13 adding services 8-6 MCU receiving services 8-11 properties General 8-14 Permission Group 8-15 sharing services with other zones 9-22 MCU services 8-7 editing 8-7 properties Additional IDs 8-12 Ad-hoc conference 8-9 Bandwidth control 8-9 General 8-8 LDAP 8-12 Services 8-11

MCU Services properties 6-9 MCU services zones 9-8 MeetingPoint end points. See end points, MeetingPoint menu bar 3-4 Microsoft Exchange Server, 5700 VFA configuration 10-7 to 10-11 in 5700 VFA Administrator 10-10 Mitel Networks 5720 Video Conference Bridge (5720 VCB) 12-1 installing 2-6 license 5-18 properties Firewall 12-4 General 12-3, 12-4, 12-5, 12-6, 12-7, 12-8, 12-9, 12-10 Multicast 12-15 Product Info 12-5 OoS 12-16 Session 12-14 Software Update FTP 12-8 Software Update Impersonation 12-7 Software Update Parameters 12-9 Software Update Run 12-10 Software Update Version 12-6 Status 12-4 setup 12-2 to 12-17 monitoring network status 4-16 to 4-25 Multicast Location Requests 9-3, 9-15 Multicast properties 5720 VCB 12-15 multiple selection 3-4 Multipoint Control Unit. See MCU MXMNode class 10-29 to 10-32

#### Ν

NAT (Network Address Translation) A-14 NDS, 5700 VFA configuration 10-26 to 10-36 create 5700 VFA attributes 10-26 to 10-29 create 5700 VFA container 10-32 create MXMNode class 10-29 to 10-32

#### Index

in 5700 VFA Administrator 10-35 LDAP Group object 10-33 trustee 10-35 neighbor node 1-4 search properties 5-20, 9-2, 9-15 neighboring 5700 VFA Open mode 4-4 neighboring gatekeeper Open mode 4-4 neighboring zones 1-4, 9-1 to 9-23 Network Address Translation, See NAT, Node Status View 3-1, 3-5, 4-17 to 4-19 nodes 1-4 adding 4-4 to 4-7 changing numbers 4-11 deleting 4-12 editing 4-4 to 4-12 editing multiple 4-10 setting properties 4-6, 4-10 templates 4-25 non-registered devices 5700 VFA Server properties 5-19 adding 9-13 allowing calls with end points 6-7 allowing in ad-hoc videoconferences 12-17 allowing in multipoint videoconferences 8-4.8-9 Make Permanent 9-13 Novell Directory Services. See NDS, 5700 VFA configuration

# 0

online directories. See LDAP directories Open mode 4-4, 5-16 end points 6-1 MCUs 8-1 zones 9-2, 9-15

#### Ρ

password Administrator 4-2 end point 6-4 Permission Group properties 8-15 point-to-point videoconference hang up 11-2 initiating 11-1 Product Info 5720 VCB 12-5 Product Info properties end points 6-13 gateways 7-5 MCU 8-5 zones 9-12

# Q

QoS 5760 VCA end point B-6 DiffServ values C-1, F-4 IP Precedence values C-1 MeetingPoint end point A-27 QoS properties 5720 VCB 12-16 Quality of Service. See QoS

## R

Registering 5020/5220 IP Phones 4-12 rejecting login 4-5, 4-6, 7-2, 8-2 replacing license key 2-7, 5-19 Reporting Option license 5-18 Requirements, minimum 2-1

#### S

searching for items 4-7 to 4-9 services 1-4 Services properties MCU services 8-11 zones 9-20, 9-22 Gateway Services properties zones 9-9 Services properties, Gateway end points 6-10 Session (ad-hoc conference) properties 12-14 Setup, 5700 VFA 2-3 Short Dial Number 4-35 properties

Additional IDs 4-37 Call Forwarding 4-36 General 4-35 LDAP 4-37 shortcut menus 3-4 Software Update FTP properties 5720 VCB 12-8 Software Update Impersonation properties 5720 VCB 12-7 Software Update Parameters properties 5720 VCB 12-9 Software Update Run properties 5720 VCB 12-10 Software Update Version properties 5720 VCB 12-6 Specific Pickup dialing code 5-7 status monitoring 4-16 to 4-25 Status properties 6-4 5720 VCB 12-4 Super User 4-2 Support, Technical 1-vi System location properties 5-14 system tree 3-2

# Т

Technical Support 1-vi templates 1-4, 4-25 toolbars 3-4, 13-12 to 13-15 trustee 10-35

# U

Unconditional forwarding 6-6 dialing code 5-8 upgrading to 5760 VCA E-1 to E-6 userkey.txt 5-19

# V

*vca* file 2-9 videoconference hang up 11-2 initiating 11-1 View Event Log 3-1, 3-6, 4-20 to 4-25 filtering records 4-22 to 4-25 finding items in other views 4-9 LDAP Servers 3-1, 3-7 Login Status 3-1, 3-6, 4-16 Main 3-1, 3-2 to 3-5 Node Status 3-1, 3-5, 4-17 to 4-19 Voice-activated Switching 12-1, 12-14

# W

Windows 2000 Active Directories, 5700 VFA configuration 10-12 to 10-25 adding 5700 VFA attributes 10-13 to 10-14 adding MXMNode class 10-15 to 10-16 adding user with full control 10-12, 10-19 creating organizational unit 10-20 giving permissions to users 10-21 to 10-24 in 5700 VFA Administrator 10-25 Windows 2000 Active Directories.5700 VFA configuration 5700 VFA attributes properties 10-19 Workspace customizing 13-1 to 13-22 display properties 13-16 to 13-18 Main View 13-1 to 13-3 table styles 13-19 to 13-22 toolbars 13-12 to 13-15 workspaces 13-5 deleting 13-10 filtering 3-5 Main View 3-1, 3-2 to 3-5 menu bar 3-4 multiple selection 3-4 opening 13-9 renaming 13-8 saving 13-6 to 13-8 shortcut menus 3-4 toolbars 3-4, 13-12 to 13-15

# Ζ

zone prefix 9-6, 9-15 dialing to non-Mitel Networks gatekeepers 9-6, 9-16

Mitel Networks 5700 VFA Administrator's Guide

#### Index

in LDAP entries 9-15 Zone Settings properties 9-5, 9-16 zones 1-4, 9-1 to 9-23 adding manually 9-3, 9-15 calls between zones 9-6, 9-16 CDR records 9-6 Closed mode 9-15 inter-zone dialing 9-14 to 9-17 login 9-2 Open mode 4-4, 9-15 properties Additional IDs 9-13 Bandwidth control 9-7, 9-17 Gateway Services 9-9 General 9-4 ISDN Routing 9-11 MCU services 9-8 Product Info 9-12 Services 9-20, 9-22 Zone Settings 9-5, 9-16 zone prefix 9-6, 9-15

 ®,™ Trademark of Mitel Networks Corporation
© Copyright 2003, Mitel Networks Corporation All rights reserved